Codex
Eng
105

John Carter Brown.
Harold Brown.

Codex
— Eng
105

Belongs to Mr. Brown
of Providence

Mus. Brit.
Bibl. Sloan.
No. 1622 - -

The first Booke of the historie of Traualle into virginia Britania expressing the Cosmographie & Comodities of the Country, together with the manners and Customes of the People: gathered & obserued aswell by those who went first thither as collected by William Strachey Gent: 3 yeares thither imployed Secretarie of State, and of Counsaile with the right honorable the Lord La-warre his Ma^tie^s Lord Gouern^or and Capt: Generall of the Colony.

This shalbe written for the Generation to come: and the people w^ch^ shalbe created shall praise the Lord:

Psal: 102. ver: 18.

To the right hon.ble Sr. ffrancis Bacon knight
Baron of Verulam Lord high Chancellor of
England, & of his Maiesties most hono.ble
privy Counsell.

Most worthely honor'd Lord

Your Lo.p ever approving your self a most noble
Fautor of the Virginian Plantation, being from the
beginning (w.th other Lords and Earles) of the prin=
=cipall counsell applyed to propagate and guide yt:
and my poore self (bound to your observaunce,
by being one of the Graies-Inne Societie) having
bene there 3. yeares thither imploied in place of
Secretarie so long there present: and setling downe
with all my wel-meaning abilities a true narration
or historie of the Countrie: to whome should I submitt
so aptly and with so much dutye the most humble
Present thereof as to your most worthie and best
iudging Lordship? who in all vertuous and religi=
=ous endeauours have ever bene as a supreame
Encowrager so an inimitable Paterne & Perfecter:
nor shall my plaine and rude composition any
thought discowrage my attempt, since howsoever
I should feare to appeare therein before so matchles

a Maister in that facultie (if any opinionate worth of mine owne worke presented me) yet as the great Composer of all thinges made all good with his owne goodnes, and in our only will to his Imitation takes us in to his Act; so be his goodnes your good Lo^ps in this acceptation: for w^ch with all my poore service I shall abide ever

Your best Lo^ps most humbly

William Strachey.

A Præmonition to the Reader.
Wherein (as the ffoundation to alle the succeeding
Busines) is derived downe to our tymes, of
auntyent right and Clayme wch we
make to this part of America and
therein both the objections answered
and doubts cleirly satisfied of
such, who through Mallice
or ignorance either have
or heareafter may
call the lawfulnes
of the proceeding
heere of
in Question

The many mouths of ignorance, and slaunder,
wch are ever too apt, to lett fall the venome of
theire worst and most depraving Envies, vppon
the best and most sacred workes I soe not afrayd
to blast both this enterprize, and the devoutest
Labourers therein, wringes from me if necessity of
this imperfect defence whome yet I have observed

more in Clamour (me thought) then at any tyme
in force, to cry out still vpon yt calling yt an
vnnationall, and vnlawfull vndertaking when
lett be but observed (I pray) and soone will
appeare, theire mallice and Petulancy, to speake
as also, what a distance, there is truly sett betweene
the busines, and their Knowledge: for, in a cliere
Judgmt if any such Attaint lay vppon the
Act, neither the generall Peace of the tyme, might
not suffer yt to goe forth wth such Libertie nor
the honor of such who have sett it forward,
ymportune yt of his Matie nor would the Con-
sciences (that is knowen right well) of the chief
commanders for the execution and actuall part
thereof (let Custome have taken away however
that quicknes from the chargers owne vnsensible
and seared heart) hazard the last and setting
howers of their daies, in trayterous or ignoble
Prosecutions, yt being the pious and only end
both intended by his Matie by the honorable
Counsaile for the busines, by the Lord Generall,
Lieutenant Generall, Marshall, and such like
emynent Officers, (called forth for the dignity
of so great a Cause,) together wth the generall

adventurers wth all carefulnes, principally to endeavour the conversion of the natives, to the knowledg and worship of the true God, and the worlds Redemer Christ Jesus: How rotton and vnsownd then both to his Matie & the present faith (it is to be feared) maye they be at the Coare wthin, that dare (except it be as I sayd out of ignorance, yet cannot that excuse a factious and pragmatique tongue) quarrel and traduce, the pceedings of a whole State, and to wch if royall Auctoritie by letters made Patents both in her Maties tyme of famous memory, and nowe likewise hath ben 5 tymes concurrant. May yt be supposed any one but luke warme in christian charity would be pcell guilty herein or make yt questi=onable whether should be attempted a worke of this Piety vppon a barborous nation let the busy knowledge (to say no more) of such a one, be shrewdly suspected, and blemished: may any lover of his country? no. yt is to be feared, that he borroweth but a counterfeyt face from Janus to turne to the penall Edict, or to his Prince (if such be his grace) but

however let them both knowe, if grounds of good=
=nes, are not layd so weake, in well weyed
Counsailes, that the clamour of a Centurion
or two, can disturb Numa Pompilius knee=
=linge at the aulter; let them give yt vp in
rumor, or more subtilly cry out, that our
enemyes at Sivill, or Lishborne, at Dominica,
Mevis, or at the Hauana, are vp in armes
for vs, we can yet goe on in the Justifiablenes
of our Cause, makinge only Pompilius Answere:
And we doe Sacrifice: will yt please the
Reader to favour me a little!

Two sorts especially I must conceave of
vntoward (to stile them no worse) and ill
disposed in their wisdomes, stand much
offended with this Busines, and have devised
against yt, many sclaunders, and calumneys:
the meere Ignorant (not only in Scientia
Scientiæ, as the Scholman saies, but includinge
grosenes and simplicytie in any knowledge)
and the more opposite in Scientia Conscientiæ,
in Religion, I would to God the latter were
not more dangerous by how much.

Celeberrima per Luca vadel
and can speake amisse, out of the corrupt
seedes of goodnes, and phapps soe speaking
be heard.

And these both saye, how the vndertaking
cannot be lawfull, why? because the King
of Spayne, hath a primer Interest into the
Countrey: next it cannot be honest in it self;
why? because iniurious to the Naturalls:
and which connected togither, yt must then
necessarily followe (saye they) that yt can
be no other, then a Traiçale of flat impiety,
and displeasinge before God indeed no meane
obiections to stumble shallowe homes wittes,
who whilst they look largely and broadly on
yt, are presented wth an vgly face: but if by
a more perspective direction, we will examyne
how these Particularities may lie togither, we
shal find another Modell, and an aire of that
dignity, and Truith, wch aspiers to a cleane
contrary Comelines

For the K. of Spaine he hath no more title

nor collour of Title to this place, wch we by our industry and capences have only made ours (as for the Popes Donative of all America vnto him that is sufficiently answeared ellswere in a discourse alreddye published by a most worthy vndertaker) then hath eny christyan Prince (or then we, or any other Prince, maye have to his Mexico, and Peru, or any dominions ells of any free state and Kingdome) how neere soever, the West-Indies, & Florida may ioyne thervnto, and lye vnder the same portion of heaven wch as great bravery maye we laye clayme to all the Islands wch the Seignorie of Venice nowe holdes in the Leuant Seas; because Ciprus was once ours by the conquest of Richard Cour de Lion, and confines wth theires, then wch what more infirme, and ridiculous pretence could be framed: and yet is the King of Spaines Argument to our Interest in Virginia iust in this moode and figure.

Noe Prince may laye claime to any more amongst these newe discoveries (and soe it was

heretofore; a just distinction being therefore kept betweene the K. of Castile, & Portugall) then what his people have discovered, tooke actuall posſeſſion of, and paſsed over to his right, and noe otherwise from Columbus doth the K. of Spayne hold his strength and Dominions to this daye in his golden Indies, and no otherwise from Soto, his Adelantado, concerninge our neighbour Florida: and soe we allow him (w^th^out any one Inch of Intru-sion) both his Longitude, & Latitude in this new world, we keeping from Cape Florida nor-ward, to Cape Briton, the landes, Countries, and Territories of this pte of America wch we call ours, and by the name of Virginia, or Nova Britania, being carefully laid out (of purpose) to avoid offence into certain bounds and Regions, begynning from the point of land called Cape Comfort, and so holding all along the Sea coast to the norward 200 myles; and from the point of the said cape

within the chesepeack Bay 6 leagues which lay the Spaniards in their Cartes call Santa Maria.

comfort all along the Sea Coast to the so-ward 300 miles, and so only all that Space and Circuit of Land lying from the Sea-Coasts of these Precincles not comyng neere any land in his actuall profession but rather diuertinge from yt many a league and yet holdes he neither any chargeable fforces (to dispute his right) vppon the mayne, nor keepes Colonies (except in Florida at S.t Augustine only) nor reckons of the same, but that is at his best pleasure.—

But what nowe concerninge this point, for the more cliering of yt, to such who stumble thereat, if we should say that our right to the West Indies themselves, (since they will needes awaken vs w.th pretence of Title) is as firme ffree, and far more auncyent, then the Spaniards, & before the royall spiritles Lady Isabella, Princess of Castile, layd her Jewells to pawne to Luis of S.t Angelo, the King her husbandes Secretary, to forward the designe, & to prevent our King Henry the 7.th; who was both offred, & accepted Columbes offer, and entered into Capitulations w.th his brother

vide Hackluites Discoueries Lib. I

Barthelmew about them, anno 1489) sure we should not want some pregnat likelyhoodes, and those not only by our simple Discoveries, but by our planting and inhabiting them wth the people of or owne Nation 400 yeares before Columbus had notice of them by the Bisean Pilot, who when he dwelt in the Islands of Madera, arrived with a weather beaten Caruell and dying in his house bequeathed (as they say) to Columbus his Card of the description of such new landes, as he had found; true that is, the first shippes that Columbus carryed thither were but in Anno 1492 wch is now since 120 yeares, when lett any man be but pleased, to looke into the learned & industrious Antiquities of Mr. Camden (the carefulnes, & truth, of whose searches he that will undervalew or sclaunder, shalbe much out of love wth the labours of all good men, and powers of vertue) and he remembers vs of Madoc, the sonne of Owen Gwineth, Prince of Nor- Wales in the yeare 1170 (wch may be 439 yeares since) who leaving the land in contention betwene his two brethren Howell and Daird) prepared certayne shipps wth men and munition and after many vnknowne landes & straunge

discoveries made (sayling wᵗʰ in the Atlantick sea a
sowardly course yet still into the west at last setteled
in the West Indies as his owne relation suffers cons-
-truction wch he made in his retturne for neive
supplies the second and third tyme, wch he
transported, and after that was heard no more
of, and late observations taken in these tymes may
confirme the probabilitie hereof as first in Acuza-
-mill (so in writing Frances Lopez de Gomera) the
natives when they were first found had their Crosses
in their Chapples, and in dedicated Groves, in Gardens
by woodes, springes, and ffountaines, wch they did
honour and fall downe before, thereto saying their
vsuall prayers, wch must make illation that
Christians had ben there before the coming of the
Spaniards: and no ecclesiastical History comendes
vnto vs (since Solomons voyage to Ophir ceassed) nor
any Recordes of other Antiquities (since the fabulous
drowning by Deucalions flood, or Burning by Phae-
-ton or since the Sincking of the Atlantick Islands)
more auncyent, or before the voyage of Madoc.
Lastly the language of the Indians admitting much
and many woordes, both of places, and names, of
many creatures, wch have the accentes and welch

significations, and are yet retayned, both by the Indians
"or Mes=" Crollos (Spaniards born there) & Mulatoes
tizoes

But this is materiall and punctuall to o^r Hypothesis, King Henry 7. gave his letters pattentes
John Cabot discouers from Florida norward to Meta incognita set out by King Henry 8 sea=faring.
A^o 1495. vnto John Cabot, a venetian (indenized his Subject, & dwelling w^ch in the Black friers) and to his 3 sonnes who discovered for ij King the north parts of America, to meta Incognita & annexed to the Crown of England all that great tract of Land stretching from the Cape of Florida, vnto those pts Mayne, & Islands, w^ch we call the new-foundland: some of w^ch were not before knowen to Columbus, nor afterwards to Nicuesa, Colmenaris, nor Vasques Nunnez, nor any of the Castilians, the draught of w^ch voyage is yet to be seene in his Ma^ties privye Gallery in his Pallace at Westminster; but the Tumults (say they) who wrought of those tymes then, and preparations for warrs in Scotland, tooke away the secondary of that Enterprize, yet no whit tooke awaye (I hope) our title more then the King of Spayne may loose his to those ptes, covered w^th the same heavens, w^ch he neither fortefyes, nor planteth to this day.

Soe as we may conclude then at last, that as Christopher Columbus discouered the Islands and Continent of the West Indies for Spayne; John and Sebastian Cabot, made Discovery no lesse of the rest from Florida norward, to the behoust of England being supported by the regall Authority, & sett forth at the charge and expence of K. Hen. 7. and we hope that they will leave vnto vs, the same waye & ppriety, both to goe vnto o^r owne, and hold y^t by, as we give them: and if they will doe soe (and all lawes of Nations will assist vs herein) how iniust and parciall shall that Subiect be, & how ill a seruant in the court of his owne Prince, that will dare to give from him & his Country the right & hono^r of both gayned w^th the expence of the publique Purse & with the travels and lives of the industrious Subjects, as well may such a Traytor, lay the Crowne of his M^t. vppon the Spaniards head, as appropriate vnto him his titles, his Territories, & possessions, since so indis-tinguishable, & such Relatiues are the prince, & his Principalities, as he is said no longer to be a Kinge, that is deprived, and is every way denyed the Title of His Kingdomes, & if this argum^t be

in force (he will say) only where countryes lye neere and approximate each to other, let me then ask this question, what Kingdoms (I pray you) and Provinces lye more disjoyned and scattered? (as some families that agree best when they are furthest each from other) then the K. of Spaynes? in so much as it is only that wch holdes him to this day from not being reckoned amongst the 5 great Monarches of the world, Let no man therefore be traduced, by the accomptes wch false hearted subiects (more ielous of a forreign Princes pride, then zealous of his Mats Royalties, and ioyous in the felicyty of his government) haue heretofore made audit to him of here being raised to the view, though a short, yet a cliere pspect of or right.

Her Matie of famous memory so well vnderstood her princely right herein (derived down from her heroick grandfather to her self) as she graunted many large pattentes & gracious Comissions to divers gentlemen of birth, & quality, to inhabite those ptes, & to keepe her title quick & panting still therein; as first to

Sr Humfrey Gilbert, (whome the light first for-
-sooke, before he would forsake his hopes &
Iowineis thither) and afterward to some
tyme much honored Sr W. R. Knight, to whome
and to his heires in the 26 yeare of her Raigne
she confirmed at Westminster a large Graunt,
from 33 to 40 Degrees of Latitude exemplified
wth many ymunityes & priveledges, who
there vppon sent first thither Captaine Amadas
& Captaine Barlow 1584 wch Amadas in
memory of himself intituled a Bay at
Roanoak to this day called Bay Amadas
& after them he sent a fleet of 7 Sailes Ao
1585 Comaunded by Sr R. Greenvill, who at
Wocacon likewise more to the so-ward from
Roanoak, gave name to a port wch yet retains
the name of Port Greenvile, who left a colony of
100 in the said Island of Raonoak wch remayn-
-ed there one whole yeare under the charge of
Sr Ralph [x] Lane Generall of the same, and wch
were afterward brought from thence (by the
neglect of due supplies growing into some wantes)
by Sr Francis Drake, in his returne home wardes
from the Sacking of St Domingo, Carthagena, &

Capt.
Amadas &
Capt. Bar-
-low disco-
-ver Roanoak
Ao 1584, at
the expence
of Sr Waller
Raleigh Knt.

[x] vide Lib.
secundo

S^r Augustine: yet after this did S^r W. R. contynewe a third, & fourth voyage, w^ch had their misfortunes And A^o 1587 sent a second Colony of 150 vnder the Comaund of Captaine White, and 12 Assistentes vnto whome he gave a Charter, and encorporated them by the name of Governour and Assistants of the Citty Raleigh in Virginia all w^ch likewise miscarried by the wretchednes of vnskilfull Instrum^ts (abusing therein S^r W. R.) who falling vpon other practizes, and w^ch those tymes afforded, after the said White had ben in England the second tyme, and was refurnished out w^th thinges needefull for the colony, indeavoured nothing lesse then the relief of the poore Planters, who afterwards as you shall read in this following discourse came therefore to a miserable, and vntymely destiny

And this fatall Period had S. W. R. his good purposes, and great charges, all w^ch I haue the more largely extracted, that yt may the more expresiuely appeare, howe this is no newe Enterprize, nor taken in hand now by a generallity (w^ch true yt is, before S^r W. R. his attaynder w^thout his leaue, we might not make

intrusion vppon, the Title being only in him) to offer cause of quarrel, or offence to a peacefull Confe=derate or Christian neighbour Prince: A Surpose soe far from the Vndertakers, Councell, or body politique, to whome the Charter is graunted by his ma^tie as they shall wrest wth too much streyned Applicacons, the Endeavours of such hono=rable & religious Personages, who would raise their Country, and the fame of their Soueraigne, equall wch others, who haue enlarged their powers & their Titles, by the like meanes; and to avowe vnto the world, that if the Spanyard shall attempt vs at any tyme wch ill measure, offring either to make Surreption of o^r Shipps by the way thither, or to breake into o^r Plantations w^th Acts of hostility (as most despightfully did Pedro Messen=des, their Admirall into the french Colony 44 yeares since in Nova francia, who rayzed their fort, & hung vp the comon Soldiers (Landenmer the Generall being straungely escaped) and wrought ouer them disdainfull inscriptions, in Spanish, importing, I doe not this as vnto frenchmen, but as vnto Lutherans, wch Spainsh cruelty was yet in the winding

vp as bloudely revenged agayne, by Dominique de Gourgues of Burdeux who not long after arrived there, trussed vp the self same Spaniards, vpon the boughes of the same trees, whereon they hung the ffrench, wth these wordes, I doe not this as vnto Spanyards, but as vnto Tyrants & murtherers) nowe we are sett downe here, howe vniustly they shall pceede herein, and how much they shall lay themselves, & their faithes open to the Construction of all nations, and haply to our Revenge, wch cannot Strike weakly, wch Strikes wth the sword of Justice, in all quarrells, the good succesfe of the same, ever depending vpon the Innocency of the cause.

The Second obiection, answered

Secondly where they say, it is vnhonest in yt self, because iniurious to the naturalls, yt being the fulfilling of the ppetuall Rule of Justice Suum cuiq; tribuere, how vnfitt soever that Suum be for the Possessor; indeede yt carryes some shewe of the right, and we culpable, whilst we doe labour in the contrary, as Zenophon said, instructing the yong Cyrus, when the Prince being walked forth one day into the ffeildes,

and had spied two boyes comyng towardes him, a great boy covered wth a short and skant Coat, and a litil boy clad in a large trained, wyde, and long gowne: Cyrus stript them both, & shifted them, by the exchaunge, soe making a better pportion, (as he thought) of fitnes for eyther, but I say his learned tutor told him, how he had not done well herein, since every one was to be maister of his owne, how euer yt might appeare a matter of much Inequality and the owner vnworthy of so large a measure of ffortune.

That mynd is to be loued well, that will not leave doubting, vntill yt hath found out the truth, but it must then be veritatem querere, non insidias struere, indeed this weere a sufficyent Argument in such a Comon wealth, wch governed wth the well ordered powers of Philosophy, and all naturall knowledges, wanted not neither the supernall light, but the grounded of both these (who knowes not) doe we goe to lay, amongst a simple and barbarous people, yet had they of themselves, the first,

that is the practice of all morrall pollicyes, & offices of vertue, as pfect, pumtory, & exact, as the vnbeleeving grecians, and infidelious Romains had, yet since we (as true Christians) knowe, that the world never was nor must be only and alone governed by morality, and our Charity suffered for them, vntill we have derived vnto them the true knowledge indeed, wch is the worshipp of the true God, and their and our blessed Redeemer Christ Jesus, this can be no absolute Instance of the Right to tye vs (appeare it never so vpright and full of humanity) for sometymes, and to the bettering of mankind, the devine politique Law yt self (we see) doth put on change, and byndeth not semper et in omne, as in the cases of Theft and Adultery &c. Let me aske this question. Doe we not goe in a busines, that must result greater effects, and strive, when vs, beyond the powers, and prescriptions of morality? no man must denye yt, that will not hoodwinck his knowledg from the end and ayme, at least, to wch we lett goo all our Travailes; yet shall we no whit advaunce our early and first pseuti-ons, against those morall duties, neither, but like

the best Prescribers of those rules themselves (in the learned and last monarchies) and wch the Lowers of them nowe, we will manly pceed, and exactly observe the same, even in this worke, so as the best christian shall not be agreived to heare of or pceedinges when they shall reade of the same in our Decades, most true yt is, we knowing that the offices of humanity can helpe much in the forwarding hereof.

Then if or Accons must relish all of Pietie (not excluding neither any one pticuler helpe of Curtesie and manlines) how religious & manly both is yt, to communicate wch these simple and innocent people (vnles pchaps you will say, that it is altogither vnlawfull to enter comune and traffique wch saluages & Infedells, so bringing to the Test, the rich and necessary Trades into Turkey, and the East Indies) kneeling when we kneele, & lifting vp theire handes and eyes when we pray, not so doeyble as willing to receive or Customes, herein like raced and vnblotted Tables, apt to receave what form soever shalbe first drawne theron,

and

and who have lesse faith in Religion, w^ch maie be the more probably shaken, by how much they have lesse power eyther of Reason, or of Armes to defend yt, then the Turk hath, and w^ch whome to hold discourse of their Religion, carrieth not (at least) that challendge, and stepping into danger, as yt doth amongst other barbarous nations especyally, w^th the Turkes, (w^ch whome we hold such enterchangeable Curtesies) who suffer not their divine Lawe given them in their Mufaph, or Alcaran, by their falce pro=phet Mahumet (and w^ch makes them as they say the true Muselman before the Persian) to be subiect to the disputacon of any christian, vpon payne of a sure death; where amongst these a more easie passage lyes open to wound the illusion of Sathan, and to gayne a poore Innocent to ptake in our Knowledges, we take heaven by violence, saith the Evangelist, I am sure yt is given to men of fervent Charity, et operantibus, and good workes, albeit they be not bon causa, yet are they bonsectaria (as the Scholeman saieth) of our faith, though not causa regnandi, yet are they via ad regnum,

they iustifie not before God, yet they doe glorifie God in his seruantt and what more meritorious worke can ther be, then to labour in Godes Cause (let the world howeuer brand yt for folly, and worke them to be his, whose Image they beare, and participate wth vs of reason (carrying in their nostrills more then the spiritt of life, the breath of beastt wch how should we then pitty and take religious Compassion of? and compassion (saith Guicciardine) debates not causes and reasons, but proceedes to relief; for wch, the duttye of a good man is said, to be compounded of these two things, the Glory of his Creator, and the Love of his neighbour; and who is our neigh=
=bour, demandeth our Saviour? He that (as in an Inne) quartereth next lodging and doore vnto vs? no sure for albeit in the old lawe; the Elected Iew accompted euery Iew his neigh=
=bour only, yet since the tyme of grace, we are taught to acknowledg euery man, that beares the Impression of Godd stampe to be not only our neighbour, but to be our Brother, howe farr distinguished and removed by Seas or Lands soever from vs; and in that Stile

doe far disjoyned Princes Salute each the other, and indeed yt is the generall office of mankind, not only to wish good, but to bring yt to passe, for one of the like Creation.

Now what greater good can we derive vnto them, then the knowledge of the true and euer lyuing god? and what doth more directly and rarely minister that effect, then Society, and to wyue w^th^ them in freindshyp? since we daylie see amongst or selues, the ꝑfaine and the most disordered (might I not say almost barbarous) by Keeping Company, doth light vppon somethinge the while, w^ch^ stumbles him in his hast, and makes him often take a pawse, before he ꝓceedes, eyther shame, or Compunction striuing w^th^in him, nor is this w^th^out some plea of reason, for like doth in tyme fasten and worke into like (as ffier worketh wood altogeather into ffier) and as the eye, if it be opposed and ꝓsented to any sensible obiect that excelleth, will loose his proper & naturall function, so by conuersing, the tyme, or reuerence and awe

of ỹ better company, or some pticuler advantage, circumstance or other, may object that to the most sensuall, wch maye strike his prowd heart, so as he maye find somewhat to be ama=
=zed at, about wch whilst his Imaginations busy themselves, they may beget further dis=
=course, and argumentt of more and more goodnes.

O let heavy things tend to their centre, let light and ayery spiritts salute Heaven, and fly vpon the circumference that great and famous Instrument, of publishing ỹ Gospell and know=
=ledge of Christ Jesus. Christopher Columbus as also Vesputius Americus, who (five years after Columbus) arrived here, gave this whole country and ymmeasurable continent (wch is, and maye well be called the new world for his greatnes, reaching from the one Pole to the other, being divi=
=ded by the Streightt of Magellane, where it endeth vnder 52 degrees, on the south side, of the equinoctiall lyne) his owne name may teach vs what ꝑgresse to make even in this glorious Enterprise; the first of these, opened the waye to the Spaniard,

who since hath fild both Islands and mayne w^t the forme of their worship to God (I leave to say how officious, and superstitious) and the other as inflamed to doe some notable and Christian Act, answeared the other, (a health yet vnpleadg'd by vs, vnles we will now sett to yt) let the example of these, move vs to advaunce, (now opportunity is offred) our profession and ffaith, as Catholique, and more purged from self Inventions: have we either lesse meanes, fainter spiritts, or a Charity more cold, or a religion more shamefull, and afrayd to delate yt self? or is yt a lawfull worke in them, and not in vs? that yt is authorized vnto them even by the warrant of the Church, here Pope Alexander 6^th in his Bull and Donation to the Kinges of Castile, and their successors

Nos itaq; huius modi vestrum sanctum, et laudabile Propositum plurimum in Domino Comendantes, ac cupientes vt illud ad debitum finem perducatur, et ipsum nomen salua= =toris nostri in partibus illis inducatur, hor= =tamur vos quamplurimū in Domino et per sacri Lauacris susceptionem, qua mandatis

Apostolicis obligati estis &c.

which is, "We greatly comending this your "godly & laudable purpose in our Lord, and desi-"rous to have the same brought to a due end, and "the name of our Saviour to be knowne in those "pts, do exhort you in our Lord, and by the receaving "of the holy baptisme, whereby you are bound "to apostolicall obedience, and earnestly require you, "by the Bowells of mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ, "that when you intend for the zeale of the Catholique "faith, to prosecute the said expedicon to reduce the "people of the foresaid Landes & Islandes to the xpian "Religion, you shall spare no labours at any tyme, "or be deterred w^th any perrylls, conceaving firme "hope and assuraunce, that the omnipotent God "will give good Succesſe to yo^r godly attempte. It is read that Themistocles hearing of the great victory that Melciades had obteyned on the playne of Marathon, said, that, that report would not lett him take any rest; and Julius Casar wept at the sight of Alexanders Image, who had at the yeares of 24. obtayned the name of Great, and cryed out; Am not I miserable, that have done nothinge worthy of memory, and

yet this Prince at these yeares hath executed so many notable thinges? shall there for the smoake of momentary glory, breake out thus passionate and forward? and shall not we for the glory of our God be as affectionate and ambitious? shall we now when we know most the effectes and pfecton of goodnes (as the Sun, when he is hiest in ye zodiack, moveth slowest) be dullest, in our Solstice, and supremest height? the glorious St. Augustine, in his first Booke De Concord: Euang: cap: 32: goeth so far, concerning the spreading abroad, and teaching of our Saviour, crucified, not only to the right, but to the left hand, as it is in the 54 of Esau) as he there amply discourseth, how the gospell should be published abroad, not only by those who sincerely wth true and pfect Charity assume the function of Preachers, but also by those yt declare yt, tending to temporall endes; and surely many powerfull and divine Argumentes might be extracted from this place, wch he there at large prsecuteth, wch would confirme, and speake satisfaction, to the most sensuall, yf soe: why then besides these alleaged divine motives, politique and rationall respects,

even comon Trade and hope of ꝓfitt, might make
vs forward to be adventurers: Our Country of Vir=
=ginia, hath no want of many marchandize (wch
we in England accomplish in Denmark Norway,
Prussia, Poland &c. fetch far, and buy deare) wch
advance much, and assured increase, wth lesse
exchange of our owne, wth as few hazardes by
sea, and wch would maintaine as frequent,
and goodly a navie, as what runs the Levant
stage, and those by divers Treaties, both in Lattin,
and English private, and publique, haue ben
in their ꝓticuler names and values oftentymes
expressed, especyally that wch hath bene pub=
=lished by that true Lover of vertue, and
great learned Professor of all Artes and knowledg=
=es Mr Hariots, who lyued there in the tyme
of the first colony, spake ye Indian Language,
searcht the Country, and made many prouises
of the richnes of the soyle, and comodities therof,
besides many Planters from thence, and right
worthie marchants and those knowen to be
men of much belief, and Creditt, haue witnes=
=sed as much to the world, in these latter tymes,
if men will give them Stoage and welcome

in

in their good opinions, and sett aside their owne overweenings and singularity to enter=tayne a truith, and out of those great plenties, and havings which god hath lent them to be his Stewards here) be pleased to heare them=selues entreated to spare but a litle, Little Portion, to the raising and building vp of a sanctū Sanctorū, a holy howse, and a Sanctuary to his blessed name, amongst Infidells, placinge those therein, on whome yt hath now pleased him, both to be sufficiently revenged for their ffforefathers Ingratitude and Treasons and to descend in mercy, to lighten that sate in darkenes and in the shadowe of Death, and to direct their feet in the way of peace.

But phappes there be those who will graunt, that what they have read in those discourses, delivered to ye world may be true, but will they saie what open & actuall Iniury shall we doe to the poore and Inno=cent Inhabitaunts to intrude vppon them? I must aske them againe; In wch shall we offer them Iniurye? for ffeering them trade,

or the knowledg of Christ.ᵈ from one of these two
or both the Iniurye must ꝓceede; whyᵉ what
Iniury can yt be to people of any nation, for
Christians to come vnto their Ports, havens, or
Territoryes, when the Lawe of nations, (wᶜʰ is
the Lawe of God and man) doth priveledge
all men to doe soe, which admitts yt lawfull
to trade wᵗʰ any manner of people, in so much
as no man is to take vppon him (that know-
-eth any thing) the defence of the Salvages in this
point, since if Salvadges themselves, may
not impugne or forbid the same, in respect
of comon fellowship & Comunity betwixe
man & man, albeit I will not deny, but that
the Salvadge may (wᵗʰout ꝓadventure) be
ignorant of as much, and (alas) of more
graces beside, & ꝑticularities of humanity,
the reason whereof being, because (poore soules)
they knowe not yᵉ good wch they stand in
neede of: but we that are Christians doe knowe,
howe this Lawe (enriching all kingdoms) giues
priviledges to Ambassadours, keepes the Seas
comon and safe, layes open Ports and
havens, and allowes free Scales; and liberall

accesse, for whosoever that will import vnto them
such Comodities as their countryes have, and
they want; or export from them some of their
plentye (duties and customes principall observed)
yf this be so for the first, concerning the other
yt may fully be answeared wth this demaund,
shall yt not followe if traffique be thus iustifi=
-able, (wch intended nothing but transitory & fitt
e increase of temporal and worldly goodes)
shall not plantinge the Cristian faith be much
more? yes by how much the divine good (not
subiect to change, and vnder no alterācon)
excells, takes an accompt, and surveyes, and
surpasseth all things, and all our actions
are to bend their Intentions thether ward,
and what way soever we make, yet misera=
-ble and wretched he, whose every lyne he
drawes euery act and thought, doe not close
and meete in the center of that; alas, would
we but truly examyne all, and the best of
things wch the rownd eye of the Sun lookes
vpon, what is the travell for all the pompe,
the Treasure, the pleasure, and what soever
belongeth to this life, compared to the ritches

of the Soule, the excellency whereof (if there were
nve other proofe to confirme yt) yt sufficientlie
sett fourth by the rich Ransome that was paid
for yt, even the pretious bloud of Jesus Christ.
ô our dull Ignorance, depraved wills, or impfec=
=tion of reason, or all three, how doe yee transport
vs. who when we should labour, a waue
and diminution of the most Imposture, the
most false, and yet eye pleasing obiectt of our
carnall sences, not soe much as making
out after the least of them, in poore Indian
Canoas, how their godlie Representations beguile
vs, that we neclect all good things and (like
English Lordes) pursue these on the Streame
of delight, in swift bargest. when let vs heare
the end of all, and some of all happiness saith
St. John. Chapt. 7 ver. 3. and that is to knowe
one only true God and Jesus Christ, whome
he hath sent, who being the ever blessed, and
only wysdom of the father, gives amonge other
comaundements to his Apostles this. Goe and
baptize all nations: vniversa, enim propter
semet ipsum operatus est Dominus: Prov. 16.
this worde and ptricle (all) infallably, and

mathematically

mathumatically, concluding then, even this is proove Sabbadges.

But yet it is iniourious to the naturall Inhabitants still saye owes: wherefore? It is because yt is, nowe indeede a most doughtie and — mortall reason, a great peice of Iniury to bring them (to invert our english Prouerb) out of the warme Sun, into Gods blessing; to bring theem from bodily want confusion, misery, and these outward Anguishes to the Knowledge of a better practize, and ymproving of those benefitts (to a more and ever diuine advantage, and to a Civiler vse) wch God hath given vnto them, but enwolued and hid in the Bowells and womb of their land (to them barren, and vn= =profitable, because vnknowne) nay to exalt (as I may saie) meere privation, to the highest degree, of ffection, by bringing their wretched soules (like Cerberus from Hell, from the Cheynes of Sathan to the armes and bosome of their Saiiour: here is a most impious piece of Iniu= =ry: Let me remember what Mr Simondes prea= =cher of S. Saiiours saith in this behalf, It is

Sic

as much (saith he) as if a father should be said to offer violence to his child, when he beats him to bring him to goodnesse: Had not this violence, and this Seruitude bene offred to vs by the Romans (as the warlike Scots did the same likewise in Calidonia, unto the Picts) even by Iulius Caesar himself, then by the Emperour Claudius, who was therefore called Britannicus, and his Captains Aulus, Plautius, and Vespasian (who tooke in the Isle of Wight) and lastly by the first Lieutenant sent hither Ostorius Scapula (as writes Tacitus in the life of Agricola) who reduced the conquered parties of our barbarous Land into Prouinces, and established in them Colonies of old Soul=diers, building Castells, & Townes, and in every corner teaching vs even to knowe, the powerfull discourse of diuine reason, (wch makes vs only men, and distinguisheth vs from beasts, amongst whom we lived as naked, and as beastly as they) we might yet haue lyued overgrowen satyrs, rude, & vntu=tred, wandering in the woodes, dwelling in Caues, and hunting for our dynners,

as the wild beastt in the forestt, for their
praye, prostetuting our daughters to Straung=
=ers, sacrificing our children to our Idolls,
nay eating our ownne childrene as did
the Scotts in those daies, as recitetth Tho:
Cogan Bachellor of Phisick in his booke
De Sanitate Cha. 137. printed 1189. and dedica= sic
=ted to the earle of Hertford, in wch place he
bringeth in St. Hierome himself by waye of Pro=
=soppœia, affirming soe much vppon his Knowe=
=ledg, his wordes there alleaged are these, What
shall I say (saieth St. Jerom) of other nations,
since that when I was a Boy, I saw in Fraunce,
Scotts, a People of Britannia, eate mans flesh,
and when they found in the forrests, Heardes of
swine, Beasts, and Cattaile, they would cutt off
the Buttocks of the Boyes that kept them, and
also the womens Papps, and tooke that to be the
most deinty, and delicate meat and as the reve=
=rent Beda Reports (before the Britons were con=
=verted to the Ghospell,) murthering whole troupes
of men to accompanyes and serve their freindes
dying, in the other life; as they did to the sondry
gemes in the west Indies, at what tyme Columbus

arrived there; and as they did in Peru, and Mexico, at what tyme Ferdinando Cortez reduced them to the Christianity; and as the Quiyough-quissocks (or Priests) doe to the Idolls of the Salvadges here, albeit I hoope they will not long doo soe yf by a gentle and faire entreaty, we may win them to be willing, to heare and learne of vs, and our preachers, the more civile vse of every pticuler, in wch they now too rudely & beastly doe amisse.

All the Iniury that we purpose vnto them is but the amendements of those horrible heathein sines, and the reduction of them to the aforesaid manly dutyes, and to the knowledg (wch the Romans could not give vs) of that God, who must save both them and vs, and who bought vs alike, wth a deare sufferaunce, and pretious measure of mercy.

For the after enabling of or selfes vnto wch so heavenly an Enterprise, who will thinck yt an vnlawfull act, to fortefie & strengthen our selves (as nature requires) wth the best helpes,

and

and by sitting downe wth Guardes, and Forces about vs in the wast and vast vnhabited grownds of their[o] amongst a world of wch, not one foote of a thousand doe they either vse, or know howe to turne to any benefitt; and therefore lyes so great a Circuit vayne, and idle before them.[o] nor is this any Iniurye vnto them, from whome we will not forcably take of their pvision and Labours, nor make rape of what they cleanse and manure, but prepare and breake vp newe grownds, and therby open vnto them likewise, a new waye of thrift, or husbandry; for as a righteous man (according to Solomon) ought to regard the lieff of his beast, so surely Christian men should not shewe themselues like wolves to devoure, who can not forget that every sowle, wch God hath sealed for himself, he hath done yt wth the print of charity and compassion, and therefore even every foote of Land, wch we shall take vnto or vse, we will bar=gayne and buy of them, for Copper, Hatchetts and such like Comodityes, for wch they will even sell themselves, and wth wch they can purchase double that quantity from their

neighbours, and thus we will comune, and entreate wth them, truck, and barter or Comodityes for theires, and theires for ours (of wch they seeme more faine) in all Love, & freindshipp, vntill for our good purposes towards them, we shall finde them practize violence or Treason against vs (as they have done to our other Colony at Roanoak) when then I would gladly knowe (of such who presume to knowe all things) whether we maye stand vpon our owne Innocency or no, or hold yt a scruple in humanitye, or any breach of Charity (to prevent our owne throats from the Cutting) to drawe our swordes, et vim vi repellere?

Planting (saith Sr George Peckam writing an Apologye in the like cause) may well be devided into two sorts, when Christians by the good liking and willing assent of the Salvadges, are admitted by them to quiett possession, and when Christians being inhumanely repulsed doe seeke to attayne and mayntayne yt right for wch they come, in regard of establishment of Christian Religion, either of them maye be

lawfully exercyzed, for what soever God by the ministration of nature hath created on earth, was at the beginning comon among men, may yt not then be lawfull nowe to attempt the possession of such Lands as are voide of Christian Inhabitants for Christs sake? Harke, Harke, the Earth is the Lords and all that is therein.

And all the world he will call & provoke,
Even from the East, and so forth to the west.

As yt is in the 50. Psalme, where Dauid prophesieth, howe god will call all nations by the Gospell, and in the 12. verse.

For all is myne that in the world doth dwell.

and who shall bar him from his possession? in the second booke of Esdras the 6. chap. 14. ver. saieth the Prophet, And besides this Adam whome thow madest Lord over all the workes which thow hadst created, of him come we all. and in the newe Testament Paule called himself the Apostle of the Gentiles in the 11 of the Romans 32. ver. saith, that God hath shut vp all in vnbelief, that he might have mercy on all, yet

in an other place of the same Epistle he saieth;
and how shall they call on him in whome they
have not beleeued, and how shall they believe
in him, on whome they have not heard? and
therefore he concludeth ô how beautifull are the
feet of them which bring glad tidinges of peace, and
bring glad tidings of good things! and in the
third of Sophonias. The Children of my dispersed
(so he calleth the Apostles) shall bring me pre-
=sents from beyond the Banches of Æthiopia:
Besides (omittinge the peregrination of Paule,
and the Travells of Barnabas, into so many Straunge
Countries, Islands, and Kingdomes of the Gentiles,
laboring in this office, & reducing so many Cittys
of theires to the knowledg of Christ crucified,
in Grecia in Pisidia, Pamphilia, Perga, Attalia,
in Asia, and Syria. insomuch as Antioch
was come to be called at length the new Cittye,
and Jerusalem, of the Gentiles; as also omitting
the vision wch Peter saw in Joppa, of a vessell
as it had bene a great sheete, let downe from
heaven by the 4 Corners, in wch were 4
footed beasts of the Earth, wild beasts, creepinge
things, and fowles of the heaven, wch the voice

wch

wch accompanied yt, saying, Arise Peter, slay and eate, and this done, three tymes, forbiddinge him to accompt those things polluted or vn=cleane (meaninge the Gentiles) wch God had sanctified, and made holy; And let me remem=ber wch is worth all observation, and to be bound to the palmes of or hands, and to be written vppon the lyntells and Brow posts of all our dores, for the Encouragement, and Comfort of vs, who are imprest in this ser=vice, yt is one of or daylie petitions, wch we are taught by or blessed Saviour, when we pray, and of yt quallity, as when we have first entreated grace, to esteeme valewe, and honour god according as he ought to be, both in wordes & workes, as also in or holy & Chris=tian Conversacon, for so much signifieth Hal=lowed be thy name) we presently ad, Thy Kingdome come, wch ymplieth, that it would please, the great & mercyfull god, that his sacred word, might have a powerfull passage throughout the world, yea in such sort, that all nations might be reduced to the Kingdome of grace, and made Partakers of the Redemption,

nor must we ymagine, that this is nowe to be done by myracle, for such it is thus foresaid by Esay in his 66 chap. Those which shall escape out of Israell shall goe farr off to Tharsis and to the remote Islands, where they shall convert many nations vnto the Lord, & therefore is Christ called The saluation of nations Gen: 4. Esay. 7. there being no other name vnder heaven vnto men whereby to be saved, but only this of Christ Act. 4. And in the Old Testam^t we shall read, when straunge and great nations would not submitt, to the yoake of this knowledge of the everlasting god, by faire entreaty, they were ferro, et flammis, compel'd thereunto: in Iosua and the Iudges plentifull Instances adhere to the making of this good: there is to be seene, how Moses, Iosua, and Gedeon, would send spies, and discoverers for the like purposes (misit igitur Iosue filius Nun de Setim duos viros explora= =tores in abscondito et dixit eis, ite, et conside= =rate terram urbemq Iericho. Ios. 2) into Kingdomes, nations, and Provinces, and thereafter beseiged their Townes, and strong

Howldes: and when the Gentiles would not call for mercy, they would lay waste, and burne their chief Citties; so fell Jericho, and so was Ai surprised, the Inhabitants slayne, and their Kinge hanged vp, Read the 12 – Chapter: and you shall find a Catalogue of 31. Kings and great Princes of the hethen, put to the edge of the sword, whilst the Gibionites intreating by Ambassadours, were taken into ꝓtection, and admitted into the Colonye of the Israelites, and yet made their servants, and fetch waters.

And thus, these few and vnskilfull scœnes, but scœnes of Truith, brought to this Act, they shall suffice, to begett a settled opinion of goodnes, and of the right of this busines, in any who hath heretofore doubted, appealing to impartiall Judgments whether the Kinge of Spaine hath priority of Title, to this part of America, before the English: nay whether he hath any Coulour of Title by this at all? or whether this Enterprize be an vn= =christian Acte, or Injury to the Naturalls?

and if neither? whether their Epiphonema.
deserves iust shoute, and applause, whoe
declare yt vnlawfull, and an vnnaturall
Busines, and to God displeasinge.

Finis.

Caput. I.

The Cosmographie of Virginia Latitude & bounds Extention upon a right line: first Division: the quality of the Mountaynes, and description of the high land: subdevided; her temperature; wynds, soyle, valeis, Plaines, Marishes, &c.

Virginia how bounded

Virginia - Britannia, is a Country in America, w^ch^ lyeth betweene the degrees of 30 and 44. of the north Latitude: the bowndes whereof may well be thus layd; on the east runneth the great Ocean or mayne Atlantique - sea; on the south side, Florida; on the north, Noua Francia, as for the west, the lymitts thereof are vnknowne, only it is supposed, there may be found the discent into the South Sea, by the Spaniards called Mardelzur so meeting with the doubtful north west passage w^ch^ leades into the east to China Cathay, Giapan, the Moluccaes &c. now ymagined to be discovered by our Countryman Hudson, and therefore, for the more certainty

thereof the Search anew this pnte yeare vndertaken by Capt. Button, Capt. Nelson & Capt:

albeit there be who affirme, that if there should be a third Land-Locked Sea, wch hath no entercourse at al wth the Ocean (like the Mare Caspiñ, and Mare Mortuũ in Palestina) yt lieth vpon the Northwest of America, when yet againe Gemã Frisius recordeth 3 Brethren that went this passage, and left a name vnto the streights of Anian, where the sea striketh south into Mar del zur, beyond America whereby that streict is nowe called, Fretũ triũ fratrũ; we doe reade likewise of a Portugal, that passed this streit of whome S. Martin Furbisher speaketh that was imprisoned therefore many yeares in Lishbon likewise Anordaneta a ffrier of Mexico, came out of the Mar del zur this way, into Germany, whose card hath ben seene by gentlemen of good credit.

Anian the north western streict in the height of supposed to ioynt Asia & America togither.

How virg. extendeth vpon a right lyne

It is a spatious & ample tract of land from North to South, vpon a right lyne yt maye be 700 myles; from East to West (in the narrowest place) supposed some 300 myles; and in other

places 1000 a sufficient space, and ground enough to satisfie the most Covetous, and wide affection of him, whose frames to himself any other end, then the only true one, of this Plantation

Of all this Country (in due place) we purpose to speake, though more particularly of that pte; wch was bigun to be planted by the English in the yeare of or Lord God 1606 and wch may lye vnder the Degrees of 37, 38 and 39 and wch part devided maye well suffer (wth Germany) the appellation of the High, and Low-country from the mouth of the Chesapeak Bay vp to the head of the Rivers, all wch I call Virginia, as the High Land about the falls (as yet vndiscovered) being the mayne Continent, I call Britania, nor doe I hold this Partition lesse proper, or more impertinent vnto this Kingdome, than England, Scotland, & Wales is to great Britany: or Aquitania Celtica and Belgia, to France; or to Spayne. Portugall, Castile, and Arragon. The division

High
Low
Country

Concerning the High land little can we

say as yet because thereof little have we disco=
=vered, only some Indians Relations, & some
few daies marches into the Monocan Country,
of our owne, have instructed vs thus far.

(Description of the high land, above the falls.

This high land or Britannia, then say we,
is the mayne, and firme continent, wch extendeth
we wot not how far, beyond the Cataract or
fall of water, wch the Indians call Paquachowng,
from whence one daies Journey into the Monocan
Country or elder Planters (at their first comyng)
proclayned his Matie King of the Country at
Mohominge (a neighbour village) and sett
vpp a Crosse there wth his Mats name inscribed
thereon, the said Falls being 150 myles vp
from the mouth of the Bay, and where the
current there at his head falleth wth an easye
discent 3 or 4. fathome downe into the
Low Country.

From the falls our men have heretofore
marched (as the river led them) about 40 or
50 myles, and fownd the High Land wooddy,
little champion, wth rising hills, rockey &
mountanous

mountanous, and so all along from the north, by a Sowth-west lyne, in so much as the more so-ward yt further off from the Bay are those mountaynes, from the fall certaine Brookes, wch after come to 5 principall navigable rivers, these run from the nor-west into the So-est, and so into the west side of the Bay* as hastinge themselves to emptye into the bay, to paye their Tribute to the Ocean.

* The fall of every River is within 20 or 15 miles one of another.

The mountaines here at the head are of divers natures, for the Rocks are of a constitution like milstones, some of a blew metallyne Coulour, some of marble &c. and many peices of scattred Cristall we find, as throwne downe by water from the mountaynes, for in wynter these Mountaines are covered with Snow, and when yt dissolveth the waters fall wth such violence, that they cawse great Invndacons in the narrow valleis, wch yet is scarse pceaved being out in the Rivers, These waters wash from the Rocks such glistering Tinctures, that the ground in some places semeth as gilded, where both the Rocks and the earth are so splendant to behold, that

very good Judgmt would phapps be pswaded they conteyned more then pbabilities. Sure yt is that some Mineralls haue ben there found.

This High land is in all Likelyhoodes a pleasant Tract & the mould fruictfull, especially what may lye to the so- ward, where at Peccarecamek and Cohanahoen by the relation of Machumps, the people have houses buildt wth stone walles, and one story above another, so taught them by those Englishe whoe escaped the slaughter at Roanoak, at what time this our Colony under the Conduct of Capt. Newport, landes within the Chesapeak Bay, where the people breed vp tame Turkeis about their howses, and take Apes in the mountaines, and where at Rotanoe the Werowance Eyanoco preserved 7 of the English alive, fower men twoo boyes and one yong mayde (who escaped and fled vp ye river of Chanoke) to beat his copper, of which he hath certaine myner. at the said Rotanoe as also at Pawawaick, are said to be store of salt stones.

Houses of stone, tame Turkeys, & Munkeys, supposed at Peccarecamek.

Poketawes wch the West Indians (our neighbours) call maiz their kind of Wheat, is here said to be in more plentye then below, and the Low country fruictes grow here: yt is supposed that the Low land hath more fish and fowle, and the High land more number of beasts, the people differ not much in nature, habit, or condicon, only they are more daring vppon vs, and before we erected our Forts amongst them, there was ever enmity, and open warrs, betweene the High and lowe Country going by the names of Monocans and Powhatans.

To the norward of the Falls, and bending to the Nor-east lieth the skirt of this High-land Country, from whence the aforesaid 5 great navi-gable Rivers, take their heads, wch run through the Low-land (as is before mencyoned) into yᵉ Chesapeak Bay, this quarter is altogether vnknowen to vs as yet only herein are seated (say the Indians) those People whom Powhatan calls the Boccotaw-wonaukes, who (he saith) doe likewise melt copper & other mettels, how true we must leave to further discovery.

The Bocco-taw-won-oaks melt Copper

To the nor-ward againe of this in the height of 44 lyeth the Country called Sanaguid, the Kingdome wherein our westerne Colony vppon the river of Sachadehoh was some tyme planted, wch is a High Land and noe lesse Fruitfull then these other pts, saue only the extremity of the winters coldnes makes yt lesse pleasant, yet did oure men in their yllbuilt & bleake cottages, endure one whole wynter there wthout any great losse or danger, nor is it more cold, then the winter in Scotland, and therefore though that Colonye be now discontynued, yet is not ytt the reason, but rather the death of the Honorable Gentleman Sr John Popham Knight, late Lord Chief Justice, chief Patron of the same.

Diuision of the Low Country

Now concerning the low land or Virginia, wch bordereth West and nor-West, vppon the Falls, and the Country of the Monacans and north vppon the Bocootawwanankes, East vpon the sea & South vppon Florida, yt may well enough be deuided into South Virginia and north Virginia, the Chesapeak Bay and Powhatan River parting these twoo.

Cape Henry

The Cape of this Bay on the South side, we call Cape Henry in honour of that our most royall deceased Prince, where the land shewes white hilly land, like vnto the Downes, and all along the shoare growe great plenty of Pines and firrs.

Cape Charles.

The north fore land of this Bay, wch the Indians terme accowmack; we call Cape Charles, in honr of or now prince at that tyme Duke of York, wthin these tyes & Country, and only by the mouthe of this goodly Bay the Entrance therevnto.

South Virginia

South Virginia is a very low sandy soyle, without Rockes, or any stones at all, yt is thick sett wch woodes of divers kindes, and in all thinges resembleth North Virginia, excepted the Lowneſse of the Land, and want of stones; yt

described

hath divers Rivers in yt, but none navigable to our knowledge, yt hath many Islands, wch lie into the Sea, before the firme Land, but the Water is not deepe for shippinge betweene them and the mayne, yt is said to have of the same silke,

wherof the Chynoes make their Damaske, called by the Portugalls, Sone del cherna in great abounduance, and sondry Apothecary druggs, wch are nowe found likewise as frequent in or north pte; It is a fruitfull Countrey, and not much subject to Cold, in this Country it was that Sr Walter Ralegh planted his two Colonies, in the Islande aforesaid called Roanoach.

Roanoak not vnder the Comaund of Powhaton vide Lb 2.

No pte of this South Country is supposed to be vnder Powhatan but vnder an absolute Weroance as powerfull and great as Powhatan. It shall not fall in here so well at large to pticulate the Bounds, estate Customes and comodityes of this South pte, since yt shalbe exemplified in his due place in the second booke of this decade as it is already sett forth and expressed to publike viewe both in English & latyn by Theodorus de Bry & Mr Harriotts, who was a planter there one whole yeare, albeyt I must acknowledg, the coherance of both the Countryes is such, as the relation of the one, maie suffice to give vnderstanding

of the condicon & quality of both.

North Virginia Britannia

North Virginia lyeth on the north side of Powhatan or the first River w^ch in the Chesapeak Bay (w^ch we have called the Kinges River) vp to the falls and from thence by the skirt of the high Land, by the heades of the Rivers, even to our mayne Sea, vpon the northerne shoare of the w^ch said Kynges River (as London vpon the Thames) are seated as yet our prin=cipall Townes and forts, w^ch are in Chief comaunded by their great Kinge Powhatan, and are comprehended vnder the Denomyna=tion of Tsenacommacoh, of w^ch we maye the more by experience speak Yt being the place wherein o^r abod & habitation hath now (well neere) 11 yeares consisted.

The temperature

The Sommer here is hot as in Spaine, the winter cold as in ffraunce, or England, the heate of the somer is in June, July, and August, but comonly the coole Breeses af=swage the vehemency of the heat, the chief of winter is half December, January, February,

and half March.

not under nor too nere the Tropicks.

The temperature of this country doth well agree wth the English constitucons, being sometimes seasoned in the same, wch hath appeared vnto vs. by this, that albeyt by many occasions, ill lodging at the first (the poorer on the bare ground, and the best in such miserable cotages at the best, as through wch the fervent piercing heat of the Sun wch there (it is true) is the first cause creating such sommer ffevers amongst them, found never resistance) hard fare and their owne Judgments and affeties instructing them to worke hard in the faint time of sommer, the better to be accomodated and fitted for the wynter) they have fallen sick, yet have they recovered againe, by very small meanes, wthout helpe of fresh diet, or comfort of wholsome Phisique, there being at the first but few phisique helpes, or skilfull Surgeons, who knew how to apply the right medecine, in a new Country) or to search the Quality and constitution of the Patient and his distemper, or that knew how

to

to Councell, when to lett blood or not, or in necessity to use a Launce in that office at all.

In the year 1607 was an extraordinary ffrost in most of Europe, and this frost was found as extreame in Virginia, but the next yeare following, and so ever since hitherto for 8 or 10 dayes of ill weather, we have comonly 14 daies of faire and somerly weather.

The wyndes

The wyndes here are variable; from the So-west come the greatest Gusts, wch Thunder, and heat, the Nor-west wind is comonly cook, and bringeth faire weather wth ytt: from the north is the greatest cold, and from the east, and south-east (as from the Bermudas) ffoggs and raines, sometymes there are great droughts, other tymes much rayne, yet we see not, but that all the variety of needfull ffruitt and vegitables, wch we transport from hence and plant there, thrive, and prosper well, of wch husbandry and thrift we have made many experiments, and they stand, vs nowe in noe litle vse, having plentye of them; there is not

Our English fruites & seeds prosper in virginia.

that seed or hearb, wch our Country here by manuring, and culture bring forth, but doe there growe likewise quickly, and to no change-able last from their nature, nay to better then in England, as Parsenips, carrotts, Turnips, Pumpions, Mellons Cowcumbers &c., and many of or English gardein seedes Poisley, endiff, scorey &c. there hath bene brought from the West-Indies the plantt of Orange Trees, wch put into the ground carelesly and neclected, have yet prpered, as also the vines of Fraunce, Tobacco seed from Trinidado, botton Wool, & Potatoes, we have committed to the triall of or soyle, and they yerely come to good passe, the rootes of the delicious Indian Pina, sett in a sandy place thrived, and contynued life, wthout respect had of yt, vntill the cold wynter & the weedes choaked yt, yet in this fruict said to be daintye, nice and of that nature, that noe art, or Industry, hath ben found out hitherto, that could preserve yt in any clymate, but in the West Indie Islands only, for the likelyhood of growing of Sugar canes, we have some ꝓbable hopes, by reason

Tobacco
Cotton-wooll.
Potatos
Pinas
Orange
French
vynes -

Hope of the growth of Sugar Canes

of the greatnes & sweetnes of the stalke of the countrey wheat, and the Soile being aromaticall, as I may speake by the Saxafras, Galbanū, Mechoacon otherwise called Rubarbum Album, of wch Doctor Bohun made triall in Cold and moist bodies for the purginge of ffleame & superfluous matter, as also a Whit Bole wch Doctor Bohun calls Terra alba virginiensis, both aromaticall and Cordiall, and diapharetick in pestilent & malignant ffeavers, and some other druggs, yt can be but some little tyme industriously spent to make triall of this soe rich comodityes:

The Soyle

The vesture of the earth in most places doth manifestly prove, the nature of the soyle in most places to be lusty & very rich, the coulor of the earth we find in dyvers places resembleth Bole Armoniack, Fullers earth, Marle, and that earth wch we suppose of the like quality, wch Lemnian terra Sigillata, soe pricefull and marchantable in Turkey, as likewise there is a Clay wch the Indians call Apesqueth whereof they make their Tobacco

Sipes, wch is moore smooth and fyne, then I have ellswhere seene any, but gen̄ally the earth vpon the vpp Crust, is a black fatt mowld, next vnder that is a gray sandy marle, wch in dyvers places is a redd sand, and in other plact a hard clay, In some places a fatt slymye Claye, but the best ground is knowne by the burthen wch it beareth as by the greatnes of Trees or aboundance of weedes.

The valleys

This part is not mountainous, we sometymes meet wth pleasant plaines, small rysinge hills and fertile vallies one crossing an other, and all watered conveniently wth Brookes and Springs, by the Rivers are many plaine mari-shes conteyning some 20 some 100 some 200 acres some more some lesse, other playnes there are few, but only where the Salvages inhabite, but all overgrowne, wth trees and woodes being a plaine wildernes, as God first ordeyned yt.

marshes

A digression giving

All the Low land of South and North-Virginia is coniectured to have bene naturally

likelihood that Virginia beneath the falls to haue bin Sea here to fore.

gayned out of the sea, for the Sea through his impetuous and vast revolution (who knowes not) ravinge vpon every Coast, in some places wynns and in other places looseth, and we find wthin the shoores of or rivers whole banckes of oysters, and Scallopps; wch lye vnopened and thick toge=ther, as if there had bene their naturall bead before the sea left them, likewise the fashion of the earth is in smale risinge mounts, wch may well be supposed, that the violence of the wynd hath caused, by dryuing of light sand together moreover the mould and sword of the Earth is not 2 foote deepe, all along neare the sea, and that wch is comes only by the grasse and leaves of Trees, and such rubbish rotting vpon it, in contynuance of tyme, for in digging but a fathome or two we comonly find quick sand, againe vnder the crust of the surface, we find not any stones nor rocks (except neere the high-land) naie in most places to so-ward, not so much as a pebble stone, wch must proceed through want of tyme, that no duration hath there been wrought, besides the water ebbs and flowes

well nigh vnto the Heades of all the riveres (I meane to the Falls vnto the High land, & the natives, wch now people wch vs on this side beneath the said Falls are conceaved not to have inhabited here belowe much more in 300 yeares, but all wch we cannot but truly coniecture, that the vpland Countrye is a faier and goodly Countrey, more sweet & wholsome in respect of ayre, and more rich in soyle and fraighted wth better comodyties, and those more necessary besides the Assurance of Mineralls, concerninge wch we doe already heare the Indians talke both of Allam mines and Copper to the So-ward, where hath bene sufficyent tyme for digestion: all wch we must submitt to more cleare discoveryes.

Coput. 2.

Description of the 5 principall rivers, wth in the Chesapeak Bay together wth such by-streames, wch fall into them. A description of the Sasquesahanoughs: of Cape La-warre: the falling wth out Coast: the fitnes of Cape Comfort to fortefie at.

1. River The River Powhaton which we call the Kinges river.

On the west side of the bay we said were five faire and delightfull navigable Rivers, of wch we will now proceede to report, the first of these Rivers and the next to the mouth of the Bay, hath his Course from the West and by north, the name of this river we call the Kings River they call Powhatan, according to the name of a principall Country, that lyeth vpon the Head of yt, the mouthe of this River, neere three myles in breadth, yet doe the shoells force the Channell so neare the land, that a Sacre will over shoot yt. at Point blanck this river hath a channell for 140 miles, of depth betwixt 7 & 15 fathome holding in breadth for the most pte 2 or 3 miles, and in wch are many Iles both great & smale, yt falleth from Rocke far west in a Country

inhabited by a Nation as aforesaid that they call Monacan, but where yt cometh into or discovery yt is Powhatan in the furthest place that hath been diligently observed, are Falls, Rocks, Showlds &c. wch makes yt past navigation any higher, albeit 40 miles above the said Falls, yt hath 2 braunches or other Rivers that fall into yt, the head of the northermost comes from certaine steepe mountaines, that are said to be impasseable, the head of the other comes from high hills afar of wthin the Land, from the topps of wch hills the people saie they see another Sea and that the water is there Salt, and the Journey to this Sea from the Falls by their Accompt — should be about 10 daies, allowing according to a march some 14 or 16 miles a day. In yt runing downeward, the river is enriched wth many goodly Brooks wch are maynteyned by an infinite number of small rundells and pleasant Springs, that disperse themselves for best service, as doe the vaines of a mans body.

The by-rivers (which we

From the south side there falls into this river first yt pleasant river of Appamatuck

next

call yet by their owne names) falling into the Kings Rover

next (more to the East) are the two rivers of Quiyoughcohanock: a litle further is a Bay, wherein falleth 3 or 4 pretty Brookes & Creeks that half entrenche the Inhabitants of Warrasskoyack: then the River of Naudsamund, and lastly the Brooke of Chesapeak.

From the north side is the River of Chickahamania & blackriver of James Towne another by the Cœdar-Isle, wherein are great stoore of goodly Oysters, then a Convenient Harborow for Crayes, ffrygatts, or ffisher boates at Kecoughtan the wch By-Rill, so conveniently turneth yt self into Baies Coues and Creeks that the place is made very pleasant thereby to inhabite, the Corne-fields being circled therein in manner as so many Peninsulaes. The most of these By-rivers are inhabited by sevall Nations, or rather ffamilies taking theire names from those rivers, and wherein a severall Governour or Weroance comaundeth.

The severall Inhabitaunts

The first and next the Rivers mouthe are of Kecoughtans, then the Paspaheghes, the Ar-

upon the Kings River

=nohatecks, and the place called Powhatan. On the South side of this River are the Appamatacks, the Lunyoughcohanocks, the Warraskeynocks, the Nandsamunds; the Chesapeaks of this last place the Bay beareth this name.

2 River Pamunke or the Prince's River

Fourteene miles nonward from the River Powhatan is the River Pamunck wch we call the Prince River navigable 60 or 70 myles wth shippes of good burthen, but wth Catches & small Barkes 30 or 40 miles further at the ordinary flowing of the salt water, yt divideth yt self at Cinquoteck into 2 gallant Braunces, on the South braunch enhabite the people of

Yough=tamund Mattap=ament branches of Pamuncke River

Youghtamund, on the north-branch Mattapament on the north syde of this River is werowo=comoco, where theire great Kinges Inhabited when we came first into the Country. Ten or 12 miles lower on the south side of this River is Kiskiak, these as also Appamatuck, Orapaks, Arrohatack and Powhatan are their great Kings Inheritaunce Chief Alliance, and Inha=bitaunce: vpon Youghtamund is the seat of Powhatans three breethren whome we learne

are succeſsiuely to govern after Powhatan in the same dominions, wch Powhatan by right of birth as the elder brother, now holdes, the rest of the Countryes vnder his comaund are (as they report) his conquestes.

Before we come to the third River wch falleth from the mountaines, there is another river, wch takes not his birth or head so high, but is only some 30. miles navigable, and yſsueth from out the riffes and breaches from the In-land, the River is called Payankatauk the Inhabitaunce whereof are but few, not now aboue 40. or 50 & are the remaynes of the conquered Kecoughtans whome he transported thither, for in the year 1608. Powhatan surprised the naturall inhabitaunce of Paynkatauk his neighbours and subiects, the occaision was to vs vnknowne, but the manner was thus ſpformed, ffirst he sent diuers of his men to lodge amongst them one night, pretending a generall Hunt, who were to give the Allarum vnto an Am-buscado of a greater Company wthin the woodes, who vpon the signe given at the

Payankatauck or Mount-gomery River.

hower appointed environed all the howses, and fell to the execution: 24 men they kild outright, (the rest escaping by fortune and their swift foot=-manship) and the long haire of the one side of their heads, wch the skin cased off wth shells or reedes, they brought awaye to Powhatan, they surprised also the woman and Childrene and the weroance: all whome they presented to Powhatan, the lockes of haire wch their skyn=-nes they hanged on a lyne betweene 2 trees, and of these Powhatan made ostentacon, as of a great Tryumphe at Werowocomoco not longe after, shewing them to such the English as came vnto him at his appointment to trade wth him, for come thinking to have terrified them wth this Spectacle, and in the midst of their amazement to have seased them, but god be prayssed, yt wrought not ffeare but courage in our people, and awaked their discreations to stand vpon their Guard the more cautiously, and by that meanes they came off agayne from him, contrary to his purpose: and let me truly saie, how they never killed men of ours, but by our mens

owne

owne folly & Indiscreation suffering themselves to be beguyled, and enticed vp into their howses without their Armes when (indeed) they haue fallen vppon them and knock't out their braynes, or stuck them full of arrowes (no force) for their credulity, but of so many men wch the comon report out of ignorance giues out here, to haue bene slayne by those Indians, I would but knowe if they can name me three men that they euer killed of ours in skirmish, fort or field, but by this kind of Subtilly in them, and weakenes in ours, and whome the sword of Justice, would haue cutt off (had they esca=ped the Indians) for adventuring so amongst them, either against discepline and the Charge giuen them, or indeed against comon sence, and duty vnto their owne lyues.

How our People miscarie amongst the Indians

The third navigable river by the Naturalls of old was called Opiscatumeck, of late Toppa=hanock, and we the Queenes Riuer, this is navigable some 130 miles at the top of yt inhabite the people Mannahoacks amongst ye mountaynes, but they are aboue the place described in

3d Riuer Toppahanock or the Queen's Riuer.

The Inhabitants

in Capt. Smithes mappe, vppon this River on the north side are seated a people called Cuttatawomen wth 30 fighting men. higher on the River are the Moraughtacunds wch 30 able men; beyond them Toppahanock wch 100 men; far above is another Cuttatawomen wch 20 men, on the south far within the River is Nandtaughta=cund having 150 men, this river also as the former hath her burthen extraordinary both of fish and ffowle.

4th River Patawomeck or Elizabeth's River.

The fourth river is called Patawomock, and we call Elizabeth-River and is 6 or 7 miles in breadth, yt is navigable 120 miles and fed as the rest wch many sweet rivers and springs wch fall from the bordering Hills, many of them are planted and yeld nvo lesse plen=tye and variety of fruict, then the other Rivers, yt exceedeth wth aboundance of ffish, and is inhabited on both sides first on the south side at the very entrance is Wighcocomoco, and wch hath some 130 fighting men; beyond that is Ce=kakawwon wch 30 men then Onawmament wth 100 men then Patawomeck wth 150 able

The Inhabitants

men, here doth the River devide yt self into 3 or 4 Conuenient Rivers, the greatest of the least is called Quiyough tending nor-west but the river yt self turneth nor-east, and is still a navigable streme on the westerne side of this Bought is Tauxenent wth 40 able men, some-what further is Potapoco wch 20 men. In the east pte of the Bought of the River is Pamaco-cack wth 60 men; after Moyoone wth 100 men, and lastly Nacothnauk wth 80 able men, the River 10 miles aboue this place maketh his passage downe a low pleasant valley ouer shadowed in many places wth high rocky mountaines from whence distill ennumerable sweet and pleasant Springs

Capt Samuell Argolls discovery in Pataworneck River.

Within this river Capt. Samuell Argoll in a small River wch the Indians called Olinho Anno 1610 trading in a barke called the discovery for Corne wth the great King of Pataworneck from him obteyned well neere 400 bushells of wheate, pease and beanes, beside many kind of furrs for nyne pounds of Copper, 4 bunches of Beads 8 Dozen of hatchettes 5 dozen of Knives

4 bunches of bells, one dozen of bizers, all not much more then 40^{s} english. as also from the said Kings brother I Opassous king of a place called Pastanzo, accovered an english boy called Henry Spilman, who had lived amongst them one whole year, and dispayring of ever seeing his native country, his fathers howse (for he was discended of a gentill famely) or Christians any more, likewise here Capt. Argoll, found a myne of Antimonye (w^{ch} seldom goes accompanied with quicksilver) as also a kind of hevy black sand vpon the banck^{s} w^{ch} being washed weyed massy wth lead.

An English Boy, accovered frō the King of Pastanzo.

a myne of Antimony & another of Leade

5th River Pawluxunt, or the Duke's River.

The fifth River is called Pawluxunt. and is of a lesse ꝓportion then the rest, but the Channell is 16 or 18 fathome deepe in some places, here are infinite Soulls of divers kynds of ffish more then ellswhere: vpon this River dwell the people called Acquintanacsuck Pawluxunt and Mattapament two hundred men was ỹ greatest strength that could be there ꝓceaved by our discoveries, but they Inhabite togither and not so dispersed

as

as the rest, these of all other were found the most civile to give entertainment, & therfore from them we receaved great curteyse and much good cheare.

Thirtye Leagues norward is a River not Inhabited yet navigable, by reason of the red earth or claye resembling Bole-Armoniack, the Discoverers called yt "Bolus, at the end of the Bay (where is 6 or 7 miles in breadth) there fall into yt 4 small Rivers, 3 of them yssuyng from divers Boggs enuyroned wth diuers mountaines: vppon the river inhabite a people called the Sasquesahanongs, they are seated 2. Dayes higher then was passage for the discoverers Barge, howbeyt 60 of the Sasquesahanongs came to the Discoverers wth shynns, bowes, arrowes, targetts, swords, Beades, and Tobacco pipes for p̄sents: such great and well proportioned men are seldome seene, for they seemed like giants to the English, yea and to the neighbours, yett seemed of an honest and simple disposicon wth much adoe restrayned from adoring the discoverers as Gods. These are

" we now call it Howard River.

The description of the Sasquesahanonges

the most straunge people of all those Countryes,
both in Language & attire for their Language
yt may well be seeme their proportions, sound=
=ing from them, as yt were a great voice in a
vault or Caue as an Eccoe, their attire is the
skyns of Beares & woulues, some haue Cassocks
made of Beares Hides and skyns, that a mans
neck goeth through the skynns neck, and the
eares of yt Beare as fastened to his shoulders be=
=hind, the nose and teeth hanging downe his
brest, and at the end of the nose hangs a Bears
Paw, the half sleeves comminge to the Elboe were
the necks of Beares, and the armes through the
mouth wch pawes hanging in a Chaine for a
Iewell, his Tobacco pipe three quarters of a yard
long, prittely cawed wch a bird, a deare, or
wch some such deuise, at the great end sufficyent
to beat out the braynes of an horse, likewise their
Bowes and arrowes and Clubbs are suitable to
their greatnes, these are scarse knowne to Powha=
=tan, they can make well neere 600 able and
mightie men and are pallisadode in their
townes to defend them from the Massawomecks
their mortall enemyes, ffive of these chief werowances,

came aboard the discovers and Crossed the Bay wth them in their barge, the picture of the greatest of them is here portrayed

[Blank space]

the calf of whose leg was three quarters of a yard about and all the rest of his Lymes so answerable to that ꝓportion, yt he seemed the goodliest man they ever saw, his haire the one syde was long the other shorne close, wth a ridge over his Crowne like a box comb, his arrowes were five quarters

long headed with flintf or splinters of stones in form like a heart, an ynce broad and an ynch and a half or more long, these he wore in a woolues skyn on his back for his quiver, his bow in the one hand and his club in the other.

Tockwogh, which we call Sydney River.

On the east side of the Bay is the River of Tockwough and vpon yt a people that can make a hundred men, seated some 7 miles vth in the River, where they have a ffort very well pallisadode, and mantelled wth the Bark of Trees; next to them are the Ozinies wth 60 men; more to the South of that east side of the Bay is the river of Kusca=rawoak vpon wch is seated a people wth 200 men after that is the river of Wicocomaco, and on yt a people wth 100 men, the people of these rivers are of a little stature and of another lan=guage from the rest, and very rude, but they on the river of Accohanock wth 40 men and they of Accowmack wth 80 men, doe equallize any of the Territories of Powhatan. and speak his language, who over all those doth rule as Kinge.

Accow=mack. flu: Rapahanock Flu: Kus=carawoak Flu: Wig=cowmaw flu:

South-ward they went to some parts of Cha=
=wonock and the Mangoangs, to search them there left by S^r Walter Raleigh, wch parts to the Towne of Chesapeacks, hath formerly bene discovered, by M^r Harriotts and S^r Ralph Lane, amongst those people are thus many severall nations, of sondry languages, wch environ Powhatans Territories. the Chawonocks, the mangoangs the Monacans the Mannacans, the Mannahocks, the Sarquesa=
=hanoughs the Acquanachuks, the Tockwoghes, and the Kuskarawaocks, of all these not any one vnderstandeth another but by Interpreters, their severall habitations are more plainly described by the annexed mappe, set forth by Capt. Smith: of whose paines taken herein I leave to the Censure of the Reader to Judge: sure I am there will not returne from thence in hast any one who hath bene more industrious, or who hath had (Capt. Hen. Percie excepted) greater experience amongst them, however misconstruction maye traduce him here at home, where is not easily seene the mixed sufferaunces both of body and mynd, wch is there daylie, and wth no few hazards and hearty griefes undergon.

Chawonock
mango=
=ques.

Severall
Nations
severall
Languages

a dec
remem=
braunce
of Capt.
Smyth.
vide Lib.
3. Cap.

Capt.
Georg
Percy

The mappe will likewise present to the eye the way of the mountaynes, and Current of the Rivers, wth their severall turnings, Bayes, Shoulders, Isles, Inletts and Creekes, the breadth of the waters the distance of place and such like. In wch mappe observe this, yt as far as you see the little Crosses either Rivers mountaines or other place have discovered, the rest was had by Informacon of the Salvadges, and are sett downe according to their Instruccons.

From Accowmack to Sachadehoc our Coast All the way discovered by Capt. Gosnold & Capt. Argoll

Likewise from the north point of or Bay, wch (as aforesaid) the Indians call Accowmack and we Cape Charles, hath ye Coast all along been discovered even to the river of Sachadehock: for Capt. Argoll in his returne from the search of the Bermudas Anno 1610 after he had lost Sr George Somers 28 July in a dangerous fogg well beaten to and fro, fell wch the mayne standinge for Cape Cod, and made good from 44 degrees what Capt. Bartho: Gosnoll, and Captayne Waymouth wanted in their discoveries observing all along the Coast, and drawing the Plotts thereof as he steered homewardes,

vnto o^r Bay, and divers tymes went ashore offering acquaintance & trade vnto the people, and in the latitude of 39 discovered another goodly Bay, into w^ch fell many tayles of faire and large rivers, and w^ch might make p^rmise of some westerly passage, the Cape Land whereof in 38½ he called Cape Sawar from w^ch not farr off lay a faire banck into the Sea, and vpon the newfound land, where he hawled excellent ffish, both Hollibut, Cod, and Ling of w^ch he brought an essay and tast of 200 couple into the Colony, an excellent fish and of such a kind, that will keepe a whole yeare in Shipps hold w^th little care, a triall whereof his Lordshippe likewise brought w^th him into England, and vppon the Shoares in diuers places he killed great store of Seales.

Concerning the falling w^th our owne Coast, yt is true that there cannot be a bolder Shoare to come in w^thall, in any Country in the world, for first before we come in sight of yt 30 leques, we smell a sweet savour, as it is usually from off Cape Vincent, the South Cape

our Coaste could to fall with

of Spayne (if the wynd come from the Shoare) besides we have chaunge of water and sounding at 25 fathome 20 leagues off.

The Coast of South Virginia

The Coast of South-Virginia from Capo Henry lieth south and north next hand some 7 legues, where there goeth in a River (as is neerest gessed by the Chawonocks and Mangoangs, but yt is not navigable far, all along this Coast for 7 legues we have 7 & 8 fathome of water, wch in one legue of the Shoare & not farre, more to the South ward of this In lett River is a Cape of an Island called Croatoan, wch Cape is that, wch we call the South-Cape of Virginia, beyond wch cape So-ward and No-west of this Cape or Croatoan lye certayne smale Islandes (as before remembred) that front the Coast of the Mayne and them, is not for any shipping to passe into this shallowe Sea, there falls divers Rivers from the mayne wch the Salvadger have described vnto vs, and plentye of people thereon.

The depth of our Bay & Channell.

If we come in wth the Chesapeak Bay open, our Soundings are 15 fathome to 5. but if

we hit the Channell we have no lesse then 7 or 8 fathome, soe yt is all over bold Inough having neither Ledges of Rocks nr Barres nr sandy shelfes, but the bottome even and pleine.

How our two Capes do beare

Our two capes, Cape Henry and Cape Charles doe lye no-east and by east, and So-west, and they be distant from each other in breadth (where the sea runs in betweene both lands so making our Bay and only Entrance into our Country) as broad as maye be betweene Quinbo-rough and Lee.

Point Comfort, Convenient & necessary to fortefy.

When we come in wth Cape Henry we have 6, 7, & 8 fathome to the Point at the bottome of the Bay, and mouthe of Kings River, into wch all shippes that will enter must borrowe soe much of the shoare, as to come wthin little lesse then musquett shott of the point by reason of the showldes lying vppon the Southerne shoare by wch may be observed how convenient and necessary a Pointe that is for a substanciall fortificacon, to be raised, to secure all the other forts, and Townes, vpon this River, from what Enemies soever.

Cap. 3.

Of the beginning and originall of the people: the great King Powhatan, his Discription, and sale of his Birth-right to the English.

Pauca Cuiusdam novint originem.

It were not phappes to curious to demaund how these people might come first, and from whome, and whence to enhabite these so far re=mote westerly pts of the world having no inter=course wth Africa, Asia, nor Europe, and considering the whole world, so many yeares (by all knowledg receaved) was supposed to be only conteyned, and circumscribed in the discove=red and knowne travayled bowndes of those three, according to that old Conclusion in the Scholes, Quicquid proter Africū et Europam est Asia est: what soever Land doth neither appteyne vnto Africk nor to Europe is part of Asia: as also to question, how yt should be yt they (if discended from the people of the first Creation) should maintayne so generall and grose a defection, from the true knowledge of God, wth one kind, as it were of rude, and savadge lief,

customes, manners, and religion, yt being to be graunted that (wth us) infallably, they had one, and the same discent, and beginninge, from the vniversal deluge, in the scattering of Noah his children and nephews, wth their ffamilies (as little Colonies) some to one, some to other borders of the earth to dwell: as in Egipt (so writing Berosus) Ogenus and his howshold tooke vp their Inhabitation: In Libia and Cyrene, Tri=-taines, and in all the rest of Africa, Japetus Pris=-cus, Attalaas in the east Asia, Ganges wth some of Comerus Gallus Childrene in Arabia felix, wth in the Confines of Sabea called of Frankincense-Bearer: Canaan in Damascus vnto the vtmost Bounds of Palestine.

But yt is observed, that Chain, and his famely, were of only far Travellers, and Straglers into divers and vnknowne Countryes, searchyng exploring and sitting downe in the same, as also yt is said of his ffamely that what Countrye soever the Chil=-dren of Chain happened to possesse, there beganne both the Ignorance of true godlines, and a kind of bondage and slavery to be taxed one upon another, and that noe Inhabited countries cast

forth greater multitudes to range and stray into divers remote Regions, then that pte of Arabia, in wch Chain, himself (constrayned to flye wth wief & children by reason of the mocking he had done to his father) tooke into possession, so great a misery (saieth Boem of Anba) brought to mankind the unsatisfied wandring of that one man, for ffirst from him the ignorance of the true worship of God tooke beginninge, the Inventions of Hetherisme, and adoration of false Godf, and the devill: for he himself not applying him to learne from his father, the Know=ledg and prescribed work of the eternall God, the God of his ffathers, yet by a fearefull, and superstitious instinck of nature carryed to as=cribe vnto some supnaturall power, a kind of honour and reverence not devout to knowe the essence and quality of that power, taught his successours newe and devised manner of Godes sa=crifices & ceremonies, and wch he might the easier impresse into the children by reason they were carryed wth him so yong awaye from the elders not instructed nor seasoned first in theire true Customes & religion. Insomuch, as

then

then we may conclud, that from Chain, and his
booke birth and begynninge the first vniversall
confusion & diversity wch ensewed afterward throughout the whole world especially in divine and sacred matters: whilst yt is said againe of the Childrene of Sem, and Japhet, how they being taught by their Elders and content wth their owne lymitts and confines, not travelling beyond them into new Countries, as the other, retayned still vntill the comynge of the Messias, the only knowledge of the eternall and never changeable Trinity.

By all wch yt is very probable likewise, that both in the Travailes and Idolatry of the famely of Chain, this portion of the world westward from Africa vpon the Atlantique Sea, became both peopled and instructed in the forme of the prophane worship and of an vnknowen Diety, nor is yt to be wondered at, where the abused purity of Religion is suffered to perish, if men in their owne Inventions, and lives, become so grosse and barbarous, as by reading the processe of this History will hardly be perceaved, what difference maye be betweene them and brute beasts some-

time

times worshipping brute beasts, naie things more vile and abhorring the inbredd notions of nature yt self wth such headlong and bloudye ceremonyes of will and act.

But howe the vagabond race of Chain might discend into this newe world wthout furniture (as maye be questioned) of Shipping and meanes to tempt the Seas, togither how this great Continent divided from the other three, should become stoared wth beasts and some fowle, of one and the same kind, wth the other parts especyally wth Lions, Beares, Deare, Wolves and such like, as from the first Creation tooke beginning in their kind, and after the generall ffloud were not anewe created, nor have their beginning or generation (as some other) ex putredine et sole, by corruption and heat, Let me referre the reader to the search of Acosta in his V. booke cap. 20. 21. of his morrall and naturall history of the West Indies, who hath so officyously laboured herein, as he should but bring owles to Athens who should study for more strayned, or newe Auctority concerning the same.

Thus much then maie in brief be said and allowed concerning their originall or first begin=ning in generall, and wch maye well reach even downe vnto the pticuler Inhabitantf of this pticuler Region by vs discovered, who cannot be any other, then pcell of the same and first mankynd.

Concerning themselves more especially and their division as we find them in these pvincs where we are, we maye well say, how this Tract or portion of Land wch we call Virginia Britannia by the Inhabitantf as aforesaid Tsc=nacommocah is governed in chief by a great Kinge by them called by sondry names according to his divers places, qualities, or honours by him=self obteyned amongst them, either for his valour, his government, or some such like goodnes, wch they vse to admire and comend to succeeding tymes wth memorable Titles, and so comonly they of greatest merritt amongst them aspire to many names.

Virginia Britania called Tsenacom=macah by the Na=turalls.

The Great Emperour at this tyme amongst them we comonlly call Powhatan, for by that

Powhaton the great King, wher

borne & how descended into so many severall Provinces

name, true yt is, he was made knowne vnto vs when we arrived in the Country first, and so indeed he was generally Called, when he was a yong man, as taking his denomination from the Country Powhatan wherin he was borne, wch is above the Falls, as before mentioned, right over against the Islands, at the head of our River, and wch place or birth right of his he sold Anno 1609 about September, vnto Cap. Francys West, our Lord Generalls brother who therefore erected there a ffort, calling yt Wests fort, and sate himself down there wth one hundred and twenty English: the Inhabitants themselves, especyally his frontier neighbour Pring, call him still Powhatan: his owne people sometymes call him Ottaniack, sometyme Mamanatowick, wch last signifies great King, but his proper right name, wch they salute him wth (himself in presence is Wahunsenacawh.)

Powhaton sells his Birth right to the English Anno 1609.

The Boundes of the great Kings Empire

The greatnes and bowndes of whose Empire, by reason of his powerfulnes and ambition in his youth hath larger limitts then ever had any of his Predecessors in former tymes

for

for he seemed to comand south and north from the Mangoages and Chawonoaks bordering vpon Raonoake, and the old Virginia, to Tockwogh, a Towne pallisadode, standing at the north end of the Bay in 40 Degrees or there about. South west to Anoeg (not expressed in the mappe) whose howses are built as ours 10. daies distant from vs, from whence those veroances sent vnto him of their Comodityes as Weionock a servant in whome Pow=hatan reposed much trust would tell o^r elder Planters, and could repeat many wordes of their Lan=guage, he had learned among them in his employ=ment thither for his Kinge, and whence he often returned full of Presents to Powhatan west to Monahassanugh wch stands at the foote of the mountaines: nor-west to the Borders of Massawomeck and Bocootaw-wonough his enemyes. nor-east and by East to Accohanock Accowmack and some other petty nations lying on the East side of our Bay.

He hath divers seates or howses, his chief when we came into the Country was vpon Pamunky River, on the north side or Pembrook

Werow=
Ocomaco
Powhatans
chief Seate
on Pembrook
side when
we first.
Landed

side called Werowocomoco, wch by Interpretacon signifies Kinges howse, howbeit not liking to neighbour so neere vs, that house being wthin some 15 or 16 miles where he saw we purposed to hold ourselues, and from whence in six or 7 howers we were able to visite him, he removed and ever since hath most what kept, at a place in the desartt called Orapaks at the top of the river Chickahamania betweene Youghtamund and Powhatan.

removed from thence, & his reason.

Powhatan's description

He is a goodly old man not yet shrincking, though well beaten wth many cold and stormye winters, in wch he hath bene patient of many necessityes, and attemptf of his fortune, to make his name and family great, he is supposed to be little lefs then 80 yeares old, I dare not saye, how much more, others saye he is, of a tall stature and cleane Lymbes, of a sad aspect, rownd fatt visaged, wth graie haires, but plaine and thin, hanging vpon his broad showlders, some few haires vpon his chin, and so on his vpp Lippe, he hath bene a strong and able salvadge, synowye active,

and of a daring spirit, vigilant, ambitious, subtile to enlarge his dominions; for, but the Countryes Powhatan Arrohatock, Appama=-tuck, Pamunky, Youghtamund and Mattapa=-nient, wch are said to come vnto him by Inhe=-ritance, all the rest of the Territories before named, & expressed in the mappe, and wch are all adioyning to that river whereon we are seated, they report (as is likewise before remem=-bred) to have ben eyther by force subdued vnto him, or through fear yeilded: Cruell he hath bene, and quarrellous aswell wth his owne vsero=-ances for trifles, and that to strike a Terrour and awe into them of his power and Condicon; as also wth his neighbours in his yonger dayes, though now delighted in security and pleasure, and therefore standes vpon reasonable condicons of peace, wth all the great and absolute vseroances about him, and is likewise more quietly setteled amongst his owne.

His feare of vs

Watchfull he is over vs and keepes good especially vpon our proceedings concerning wch he hath his Sentinells, yt at what tyme

soever any of our boatt, pinaces, or Shippes, come in fall downe, or make vp the River, give the alarum & take yt quickly one from the other, vntill yt reach & come even to the Court or hunting howse, wheresoever he, and his Conoccoes i. councellours and prestf are, and then he calls to advise, and gives out directions, what is to be done, as more fearing then harmed at any tyme, wth the danger and mischief wch he saith we intend vnto him by taking awaye his land from him and Conspiring to surprise him, wch we never yet ymagined nor attempted, and yet albeit the conceipt of as much strongly possesseth him, he doth often send vnto vs to temporize wth vs, awayting phapps but a fitt opportunity (inflamed by his furious and bloudly Priestf) to offer vs a tast of the same cuppe, wch he made our poore Countrymen drinck of at Roanoak, not yet seeming willing to hold any open quarrell or hostility wth vs but in all advantages wch he sometymes takes against our credulous and beguyled people he hath yt alwaies so carried, as vppon our complaint to him yt is rather layed vppon

some

some of his worst and vnruly people of wch he
tells vs even or Kinge James (comaunding so many
divers men) must have some irreguler and vnruly
people or ells vppon some of his pettie weroances,
whome (adventure we have attempted (saieth he)
wth offences of the like nature, then yt yt is any
act of his, or done by his comaund or according
to his will, often flattering vs, that he will take
order, that it shalbe no more soe, but that
the Tassantasses, that is ye stranger King James
his people, and his people shalbe all one, brothers
& friends and thus he served vs at what
time he wrought the Chickahaminers (a nation
as we have learned before the Cominge in of
vs, so far from being his subiects, as they
were ever his enemies) into a hatred of vs
(being a mighty people and our neighbours)
and vs into the suspition of them, by urgeing
them to betray such of our men as traded
wth them for Corne, 3. whereof (yt is true)
they slew, wthout cause or offence given, and
had done as much for the rest, had not their
owne feare & cowardize wthheld them, and
this he wholly laid vppon them excuseing

himself to vs by their nomber and vnwulines, yea soe far he will goe herein sometyme, that when some of his people haue done vs wrong, and by his provoking too, he will not faile vnderhand after the fact to tell vs the Auethers of o^r^ wrong, giving vs leave and bidding vs revendge vs upon them of such subtile vnderstanding and pollitique Carriage is he.

His Attendaunce and Guarde

In all his ancyent Inheritance he hath howses built after their manner, and at every howse provision for his entertainement according to the tyme, about his person ordinarily attendeth a guard of 40 or 50 of the Tallest men his Country doe affourd, every night vppon the 4 Quarters of his howse are 4. Centinels drawen forth, each standing from other a flight shott, and at every half howre, one from the Corps du Guard doth hallowe, vnto whom every Sentinell returnes answere round from his stand, yf any fayle, an officer is presentlye sent forth that beateth him extreamlye.

The word weroance wch we call and conster for a King is a comon word, whereby they call all comaunders, for they have but fewe words in their language, and but few occasions to vse any officers, more then one Comaunder wch comonly they call Weroance. The meaning of the word weroance.

It is straunge to see wth what great feare and adoration all this people doe obey this Powhatan, for at his feete they present whatsoever he comaundeth, and at the least frowne of his brow, the greatest will tremble, yt may be, because he is very terrible, and inexorable in punishing such as offend him for example, he caused certain Malefactors, at what time Capt. Smith was prisoner wth him, and to the sight whereof Capt. Smith for some purpose was brought) to be bound hand and foote, when certaine Officers appointed thereunto, having prom many fiers gathered great store of burning coales, raked the coales rounde in forme of a Cockpitt, and in the midst they cast the offenders to broyle to death some tymes he causeth the heades of them that offend to be layd vpon the Aulter or Sacri- The Dutie and reverence which the petty Kings & people beare vnto this Powhaton

His manner of Punishing offenders.

=ficing Stone, and one or two wth clubbs beat out their braynes, when he would punish any notorious Enemye or Trespasser, he causeth him to be tyed to a tree, and wth muscle shells or Reedes the Executioner cutteth of his Joints one after another ever casting what is cutt off into the fier then doth he proceede wth shells and Reeder to case the shyn from his head & face, after wch they rip vp his belly, teare out his bowells, and so burne him wth the tree and all, Thus themselues reported that they executed an Englishman one George Cawsan, whome the women enticed vp from the barge vnto their houses, at a place called Appocant, howbeit his ordinary correction is, to have an offender whome he will only punish, and not put to death, to be beatten wth Cudgells as ye Turks doe we have seene a man kneel=ing on his knees and at Powhatans Commaund, tow men have beaten him on the bare shyn, till the shyn have ben all bollen and blis=tered, and all on a goare blood, and till he hath fallen senceles in a swound and yet never Cryed complayned nor seemed to ask pdon, for that they seldome doe.

And sure yt is to be wondred at, how such a barbarous and vncivill Prince should take vnto him (adorned and sett forth wth no greater outward Ornament and munificence) a forme and ostentation of such maiestie as he expresseth, wch ostentymes Strikes awe and sufficyent wonder in our people, preventing themselves before him, but such is (I believe the impression of the divine nature, and however these (as other heathens forsaken by the true light, have not that porcon of the knowing blessed Christian Spiritt yet I am psvaded there is an infused kind of Divinenes & extraordinary (appointed that it shalbe so by the King of Kings) to such who are his ymedyate Instruments on Earth (how wretched soever otherwise vnder the curse of misbelief & Infidelity) as it is in the Psalme Dixi vos sicut Dii estis, to governe and dwell in yt eyes & countentice of Princes: somewhat maye this Catagraph or Portrature following serve to expresse the presentment of this great King Powhatan.

[Blank space]

His multiplicity of Women.

According to the order and custome of sensuall heathenisme in the allowaunce of Poligamie he may have as many women as he will, and hath (as is supposed) many more then one hundred all wch he doth not keepe yet as the Turk, in one Saraglia or howse but hath an appointed number, wch reside still in every their severall places, amongst whom when he lyeth on his bedd, one sitteth at his head, and another at his feet, but when he sitteth at meat, or in presenting himself to any Straungers, one sitteth on his right hand, and another on his leaft as is here expressed

[Blank space]

Of his women, there are said to be
aboute some dozen at this present, in whose compa=
=ny he takes more delight then in the rest, being
for the most ple very young women, and these
commonly remove w^th him from howse to howse
eyther in his tyme of hunting, or visitacon of
his severall howses, I obtayned their names
from one Kemps an Indian who died the last
yeare of the scurvye at James Towne after
he had dwelt w^th vs almost one whole yeare,
much made of by o^r Lord Generall and who
coulde speake a pretty deale of o^r English and
came orderly to Church every day to prayers,
and observed w^ch vs the keeping of the Sabbothe
both by ceasing from Labour & repairing to
Church, the names of the women I have not
thought altogither amisse to sett downe as he
gave them vnto me, and as they stood formost

in his Kingf affection, for they observe certain degrees of greatnes according to the neerenes they ſtand in their princf Love, & amorous enter=
=tainement.

The names of some of his Woomen

Winganuske.	Attossomiske.	Ortoughnoiske
Ashetoiske.	Ponnoiske	Oweroughwough
Amopotiske.	Appomosicut.	Otterniske
Ottopomtacke.	Appinnnoiske.	Memeoughquiske.

Ihes Chil=
=dren.

He was reported by the ſaid Kempes as also by the Indian Machumps who was somtyme in England and comes to & fro amongſt vs, as he dares, and as Powhatan gives him leave, for yt is not otherwise safe for him, no more then yt was for one "Amarice, who had his braynes knock't out, for selling but a basket of Corne and lying in the Englisſh ffort 2 or 3 daies wthout Powhatan's leave, I say they often reported vnto vs, that Powhatan had then lyving 20 sonnes and 10 Daughters, besyde a young one by Winganuske Machumps his sister, and a great darling of the Kingf, and besides younge Pocohunta a daughter of his

"Vide Lib. 3. Cap.

vsing

using sometyme to or ffort in tymes past, nowe married to a private Captaine called Kocoum, some 2. yeares since.

As he is weary of his women he bestoweth them on those, that best deserve them at his handes, when he dineth or suppeth one of his women before and after meat, bringeth him water in a woodden platter to wash his handes another waiteth wch a bunch of feathers to wipe them instead of a towell, and the feathers when he hath wiped are washed and dryed agayne.

vpon his best deser=vers, he be==stoweth his cast weomen as doth the Turcke.

A mile from Oropaks in a thickett of wood, he hath a principall howse, in wch he keepeth his kind of Treasure as skynnes, Copper, Perle, and beades, wch he storeth vpp against the tyme of his death, and buryall, here is also his store of red paint for oyntment & bowes and arrowes, This howse is 50 or 60 yardes in length, frequented only by Priestes, at ye 4 Corners of this howse stand 4 Images not as Atlants, or Telamones supporters to beare vp pillers Postes or somewhat ells in the stately

At Oropaks, lyes his Riches.

building, nor as in the auncient tymes, the Images and Pedegrees of the whole stock or family were wont to be sett in Portches, or the first Entrance into houses, wth a Porter of specyall trust who had the Chardge of Keepyng and looking vnto them called Atrienses but these are meerely sett as carefull Sentinells (forsooth) to defend & protect the howse (for so they believe of them) one is like a Dragon, another like a beare the third like a Leopard, and the fourth a giant like man all made evill favoured ynough according to their best workmanshippe.

Caput. 4.

A Catalogue of the severall Weroances named wth the name of ye pticuler Province wherein they govern together with what forces for the present they are able to furnish their great King Powhatan in his warrs.

The Great King Powhatan hath dividede his Countrey into many Provinces, or Shires (as yt were) and over every one placed a severall absolute Wervance or comaunder, to him contributary to governe the people ther to inhabite, and his petty weroances in all may be in number about three or fower and thirty, all wch have their precincts and bowndes, proper and comodiously appointed out, that no one intrude vppon the other, of severall forces, and for the ground, wherein each one soweth his Corne plants his Apoke and gardeine fruicts he tithes to ye great King of all the Comodityes growing in the same, or of what ells his shiere brings forth appteyning to the Lands or Rivers, Corne,

The Country devided into many Shyres and a Weroaunce, or Lord governing in every Shyre

Beasts, Perle, Foule, Fish, Hides, Furrs, Copper, Beades, by what meanes soever obteyned, a peremtory rate sett downe as shalbe mencōned in the 6th Chapter, nor have I thought yt altogether amisse to remember here, and offer to consideration (for all after occasions) a Cathologuge of the severall Weroances names, wth the denominatyon of the pticuler shier (as aforesaid) wherein they governe together wth what forces for the present they are able to send vnto the warrs

Vpon Powhatan or the Kings
River are seated as followeth.

1. Parahunt, one of Powhatans sonnes, whome we therefore call Taux powatan, wch is as much to say, Little Powhatan, and is Weroance of the Countrey wch hath his owne name called Powhatan, lying (as before mencōned) close vnder the Falls, bordering the Monacans, and he maye at the present be furnished wth 50 fighting and ready men.

2. Ashnaquid, weroance of Arrohateck. 60 men.

3. Coquonasum, weroance of Appamatuck - 100 men.

4. Opussoquionuske, sister to Coquonasum a weroancqua or Queene of a little Mussaram or small village of Appamatuck not unlike an auncyent Episcata Villatica, and she was of power to have spared vppon Comaund some 20 able fighting men, howbeyt her towne was burnt, and killed some of her people her self miscarieng wth small shott in pursuit in the woodt in wynter, 1610 for a trecherous massacre, wch she practized vpon 14 of our men, whome she caused her people to invite vp into her Towne, to feast and make merry, entreating our men before hand to leave their armes in their boate, because they said howe their women would be affrayd els of their peece.

5. Kaquothcun, weroance of Weanock - 100 men.

6. Oholase Queene of Coiacohanauke, wch we comonely (though corruptly) call Tapabanock, and is the same wch Capt. Smith in his Mappe, calls Quiyoughcohanock on the south shoare, or Salisbury-syde whose sonne being yet younge, shalbe by Powhatans appointment Weroance of the said Quiyoughcohanock, his name is Tatahcoope. The Weroance Pepiscu=-nimah (whome by Construction as well the Indians as we call Pipisco) was somtyme posessed in right of this part, as by birth and posession discended the true and law=full weronance of the same, but vpon a displeasure wch Powhatan conceaved against him, in that the said Pipisco, and that not many yeares synce had stollen away a chief woman from Opechan Ceno one of, Powhatans Brothers) he was deposed from that Regiment, and the aforesaid Tatacope (a supposed sonne of Powhatans by his said Queene Oholase) made Weroance who being yet young (as is said) is for the most part in the governement of Chopoke at Chawopo, one of Pipiscoes brothers yet is Pipisco suf-

-fered to retaine in this his Country a little
small Kaasun or village, vppon the Rivadge
of the streame wth some few people about him,
keeping the said woman still, whome he
makes his best beloved, and she travells wth
him vpon any remove in hunting tyme
or in his visitacon of vs, by wch meanes
twice or thrice, in a Sommer she hath come
vnto our Towne, nor is so handsome a sav=
=adge woman, as I haue seene amongst
them, yet wth a kynd of pride, can take
vpon her a shewe of greatnes, for we haue
seene her forbeare to come out of her Quin=
=tan or boat through the water, as the other
both mayds and married women vsually
doe, vnles she were carryed forth betweene
two of her servants: I was once early at
her house (yt being Sommer tyme) when
she was layed wthout dores, vnder the
shadowe of a broad leav'd tree vpon a pal=
=lett of Osiers spred over wth 4 or 5. fyne
grey matts herself covered wth a faire white
drest deare Skynne or two, and when she
rose, she had a mayd who fetcht her a

ffrontall of white Curriall and Pendants of great but impfect Coulowd & worse drilled pearles wch she put into her eares and a chayne wth long lynckes of Copper wch they call Tupaan=
=taminais, and wch came twice or thrice dou=
=ble about her neck, and they accompt a
Jolly ornament, and sure thus attired, wch some variety of feathers and fflowers stuck in their haires, they seeme as debonaire, quaynt, and well pleased as (I wis) a daughter of the howse of Austria behune wch all her Jewells, likewise her mayd fetch't her a mantell, wch they call Put=
=tawus wch is like a side cloake, made of blew feathers, so artificyally & thick sowed to-gither, that it shewes like a deepe purple Satten, and is very smooth and sleeke, and after she brought her water for her hands and then a braunch or twoo of fresh greene ashen leaues, as for a towell to dry them, I offend in this digression the willinger since these were Ceremonyes, wch I did little looke for, carryjng so much presentement of civility, and wch are not ordinarily pformed to any

other

other amongst them. And the Quiyoughcohanocks may be able to make for the warrs - 60 fighting men.

8 Tackonekin an old weroance of Warras=
=hoyack whome Capt. Newport brought Prisoner
w^th his sonne Tangoit about 1610 to o^r Lord
Generall lying then at Point Comfort and whome
againe his Lo^p released vpon promise and
a sollemne contract made by the old man
to exchaunge w^th his Lo^p after he should
haue gathered in his harvest in August fol=
=lowing 500 bushells of wheat, beanes and Pease,
for Copper, beades and hatchetts, and for the
better Coulour (carrying awaye his sonne)
a left a nephew (as he said) of his w^th his
Loppe as a paione or hostage vntill the ffour=
=mance, howbeit the imposture nephew, privie
before hand to the falce hood of the old man,
watching his opportunity Capst over bord one night
(being kept in the De lawarr) and to be more
sure of him at that tyme fettered both Legg
togither, and a sea gowne vppon him, yet
he adventured to get cleer by swymming, and

eyther to recover the South-shoare or to sinck in the attempt, wch of either was his fortune we knowe not, only (if he miscarried) we never fownd his body nor gowne, and the Indians of warraskoyack would often tymes afterward mock vs, and call to vs for him, and at length make a great laughter, and tell vs he was come home, how true or falce is no great matter, but indeed the old King after that tyme refused to pforme the former bargayne, for wch his Lo^tp to give them to vnderstand how he would not be soe dealt w^th all, sent forth 2. Companyes the of his Lopps owne Company vnder the Comaund ~~vnder the~~ of Captaine Brewster and some Seamen vnder Captain Argoll, who fell vppon Twoo townes of his, and burnt them to the ground w^th all their goodly furniture of matts and dishes wooden potts and platters, for of this sort is all their goodly Epitrapezia or vessels belonging to their vse for the table or what els, and these warraskoyacks maie make 60 men.

9. Weyhohomo a great weroance of Nan=

=samund.

10. Amapetough. another lesse weroance of Nansamund.

11. Weyingopo. a third weroance of Nansamund.

12. Tachtough. a fourth weroance of Nansamund, & these fower togither may make of sturdy and bold Saluadges. 200.

13. Wowinchopunck weroance of Paspahegh whome the 9. of February 1610. whilst he with a company of his people were attempting some practize vppon o^r^ old Blockhouse at James Towne, and had bene for the same skulking about there some 2 or 3 dayes & nights Captaine Georg Percy Gouernour of the Towne sent forth Ensigne Powell and Ensigne Waller to make surprize of him, yf they could possibly, and bring him alive into the Towne, but they not finding him at any such advantage yet loath to loose him, or let his escape altogither, sett vppon him,

(he being one of the mightiest and strongest salvages that Powhatan had vnder him, and was therfore one of his champions, & one who had killed trecherously many of o^r men, as he could beguile them, or as he at any tyme fownd them by chaunce single in the woods straye=ed beyound the comaund of the Block howse) and Powell ruining vppon him thrust him twice through the body w^th an arming sword, howbeit his people came in so fast, and shoat their ar=rowes so thick, as our men being vnarmed (in their dublet and hose only) and w^thout peice were faine to retire whilst the Indians recovered the weroances body, and carried yt awaye w^th a mightye quicknes and speed of foot, and w^th a horrible yell & howling howbeit, the Lieutenant of ye Block howse one Puttock followed hard, and overreached one of the cronockoes or chief men and closing w^th him overthrew him, and w^th his dagger sent him to accompanye his master in the other world; and the Paspaheghes may make in nom=ber for the warrs — 40.

14. Pachins one of Powhatans sonns at Kecoughtan, and was the young Weroance there, at the same tyme, when Sr Thomas Gates Lieutenant Gen: took possession of yt. yt is an ample and faire countrie indeed, an admirable porcon of Land, comparatively high, wholsome and fruictfull, the seat sometyme of a thow=sand Indians, and 300 Indian howses, & those Indians as it may well appeare, better husbands then in any ple ells, that we have observed, wch is the reason that so much ground is there cleered and open, enough wch little labour alreddy prepared to receave Corne, or make Viniards of twoo or three thowsand acres, and where beside we find many fruict trees a kind of Goosbery, cherries, and other plombes, the Maricook aple and many prettie Copsies, or Boskes, (as it weere) of Mulberye trees: and is (in deed) a delicate and necessary seat for a Citty or Chief ffortifi=cacon, being so neere (wthin 3 miles by water) the mouth of or Bay and is well appointed a fitt seat for one of our Chiefe Comaunders, since Point Comfort being (out of all dispute)

to be fortefied to secure our townes above, to keepe
open the mouth of o^r River, by w^ch our shippinge
may be lett in, yt will require the faith and
Judgement of a worthy comaunder to be there
alwaies present, besides there wilbe good fishing,
and vpon one of the Capes maie be placed a
garrison to attend the furnasses and boyling
Potts for the making of salt wch without
question there (as in the Bermudas) maye
be made, for all occasions to serve the Colony,
and the fishinge voyages for the same, like=
=wise vpon Point Comfort, a great quantity of
one kind of silke grasse growes there as yet dis=
=orderly, wch having the grownd prepared and
fitted for yt, would retribute a comodytie wor=
=thie the paines, yf not going beyond the ex=
=pectacon of the good w^ch is hooped of, yt our
Lord Generall and Lieutenaunt Gen: have
erected here 2 forts as is before remembred,
the one called Fort Henry, the other Charles Fort,
as the River w^ch runes in and serves both
his Lo^p hath called Southampton River, upon
the death of an old Werovance of this place
some 15 or 16 yeares since (being too powerfull

neighbours to side the great Powhatan) yt is said Powhatan taking the advantage subtelly step=ped in & conquered the people killing the chief and most of them, and the reserved he trans=ported over the River, Craftely Chaunginy their seat and quartering them amongst his owne people, untill nowe at length the remayne of those living, have wth much suit obteyned of him Payankatanck wch he not long since (as you haue heard likewise) dispeopled they might haue made of able men for the warrs .30.

15. Upon the River of Chickohamania, some 8 or 12 miles from James Towne, wch falls from the north side, vnto o^r Kings River the Chec=hahamias, being a warlike & free people albeit they paye certaine duyties to Powhatan, and for Copper wille waged to serve and help him in his Warrs, yet they will not admitt of any Weroances from him to governe over them but suffer themselves to be regulated and governed by their priests wth the assistance of their elders whom they call Cawcawassoughes and they

may make 300 men.

Vpon Panunkey or the Princes River.

16 Opekanckeno } All three Powhatans Brethrene
17. Kequotaugh } and are the Trin-viri as
18. Taughaïten } yt were, or 3 Kings of a
Country called Opechanekeno, vpon the
Head of Panunky River and these may
make 300 men.

19. Ottahotin weroance of Kiskiack . 50

At Werowocomoco, Powhatan him-
=self hath a principall Residence and there
maye be of able men 40.

20. Ohonnamo weroance of Cantanukack. 100.

21. Ottondeacommoc wer: of Mummapacune 100

22. Efsenataugh wer: of Pataunck . 100.

23. Vropack wero: of Ochahannanke 40.

24. Reyghanghton wero: of Cofsapecock 100

25. Weyamat wero: of Kaposecocke - 400

26. Attafquintan wero: of Pamareke - 400.

27. Nansuapunck wero: of Shamapa. 100

28. At Orapaks Powhatan himself comaunds
wth 50.

29. Opophcumunck weroance of Chepecho - 300.
30. Attossomunck a Taux wero: of Paraconos - 10.
31. Pomiscutuck wero: of Youghtamund - 70.
32 Werowough wero: of Mattapainent - 140.

And thus yt may appeare, howe they are a people who have their seu'll divisions, Pro=vincs & Princs to live in, and to comaund over, and to differ likewise (as amongst Chris=tians) both in Stature, language and condicon, some being great people, as the Susque=Saha=noughs, some very little, as the Wighcocomocos, - some speaking likewise more articulate & plaine & some more inward & hollowe, as ys before remembred, some curteous & more civile, others cruell & bloudy Powhatan hav=ing large Territorys and many petty Kings vnder him, as some have fewer.

Caput. 5.

A true description of the people, of their Collour Attire, ornaments, con=stitutions, dispositions &c.

Their Collour

They are generally of a Collour browne or rather tawny, wch they cast themselves into wch a kind of Arsenick stone like red Patise or orpement, or rather red tempered oynt=ments of earth, and the juyce of certaine ferused rootes, when they come vnto certaine yeares, and this they doe (keeping them selues still so smudged & besmeered) eyther for the Custome of the Countrye, or the better to defend them (since they goe most what naked) from ye stinging of Muskitoes, kinds of ffles or biting Gnatts, such as the Greekes called scynipes, as yet in great swarmes wthin the Arches, and which heere breed abundanly amongst the marish whorts and ffenne, berries, and of the same hue are their women, howbeit yt is supposed neither of them naturally borne so discoulored, for Capt. Smith (lying somtyme amongst them) affirmeth how they are from the womb

indifferent white, but as the men, so doe the women, dye and disguise them selves unto this tawny Coulor, esteeming yt the best beauty to be neerest such a kynd of murrey, as a sodden quince is of. (to liken yt to the neerest Coulor I can) for wch they daily anoint both face and bodyes all over wth such a kynd of Fucus or vngent as can cast them into that stayne, as is said of the Greek women how they Coulored their faces, wth certayne rootes called Brenthnia, and as the Britaynes died themselves red wth woad, howbeit he or she that hath obteyned the ꝑfectest Art in the tempering of this Collour wth any better kind of earth, hearb, or root, preserue yt not yet so secrett, and pretious vnto herself as doe our great Ladyes their oyle of Talchum, or other painting white and redd, but they frindly communicate the secret, and teach yt one another, after their anoynt=ing (wch is daylie) they dry in the Sun, and thereby make their Skynns (besides the Coulo^{r}) more black & spotted, wch the Sun lifting off and hard addes to their painting) the more rough and rugged.

Their heads and shoulders, they paint oftennest & those red, wch the roote puchone, brayed to powlder, mixed wth oyle of the wal=nutt, or Beares grease, this they hold in Sommer doth check the heat, and in winter armes them in some measure against the cold, manie other formes of payntinge they vse, but he is ye most gallant who is the most monstrous and vglie to behold.

Their Hayre, their no Beardes.

Their haire is black, grosse, long, and thick, the men have no beardes, their noses are broad, flatt, and full at the end, great bigg lippes, and wyde mouthes, yet nothing so vnsightly as the moores, they are generally tall of stature and streight of Comely proportion, and the women have handsome Lymbes, slender armes and pretty hands and when they sing they have a pleasaunt tange in their voices.

Their Attyre

For their Apparell, they are sometymes covered wth ye skynns of wylde beasts, wch in winter are dressed wth the haire, but in the sommer wthout, the better sort vse large

Mantells,

mantells, of deeres skynns, not so much differing from the Irish falings, some imbrodered wth white beads some wth Copper, other painted after their manner, but the comon sort have scarse where wth all to cover their nakednes, but stick long bladed grase, the leaves of trees or such like vnder broad Baudricks of Leather, wch covers them behind and before.

The better sort of women cover themselves (for the most part) all over wth skyn-mantells, finely drest, shagged and fringed at the skyrt, cawed and coulored wth some pretty work or the proportion of beasts fowle, Tortayses, or other such like Imagry as shall best please, or expresse the fancy of the wearer, their younger women goe not shadowed amongst their owne companie, vntill they be nigh eleaven or 12 returnes of the leafe old, for soe they accompt, and bury about the yeare) calling the fall of the leafe Taqui-tock nor are they much ashamed thereof, and therefore would the before remembred Pochahun-tas a well featured but wanton yong Girle, Powhatan's daughter sometymes resorting to our

a difference in the garments, of the better sort of women.

Fort, of the age then of 11 or 12 yeares get the Boyes forth wch her, into the markett place, and make them wheele, falling on their hands turning vpp their heeles vpwards whome she would followe and wheele so her self naked as she was, all the Fort over: but being once 12 yeares they putt on a kynd of Semie=
=cinctii lethern apron (as doe our Artificers or handycrafft men) before their bellyes, and are very shamefac't to be seene bare: we have seene some vse mantells made both of Turkey feathers and other fowle, so prettily wrought & woven wth threedt, that nothing could be discovered but the ffeathers, wch were exceeding warme & very handsome. Nuda mulier erat pulchra (saith Plautus) Quam purpurata pulchrior? Indeed the ornamt. of that sex who receave an addition of delicacy by their garments true yt is some=
=tymes in cold weather, or when they goe a hunting, or seeking the fruitt of the woodt or gathering Bentt for their matts both men and women (to defend them from the bushes and shrubs) putt on a kynd of leather breeches and stockings all fastened togither, made of deere skynns, wch they tye and wrappe about the loynes after

the fashion of the Turkes, or Irish Trouses.

They adorne themselves most wth Copper beades and paintings of the men there be some, whoe will paint their bodyes black, and some yellowe, and being oyled over they will sticke therein, the soft downe of sondrie Coulowred birdes of blew birdes, white hennes howes, and the ffeathers of Carnation birde, wch they call Ahshawcutteis; as if so many variety of laces were stretched to their skinns wch makes a wondrous show, then being angry and prepared to fight, paint and crosse their foreheadds, Cheekes, and the right side of theire heades diversly either wth terra Sigillata: or wth their Roote Pochone. Their ornaments.

The women have their armes breastes, thighes shoulders, and faces cuningly ymbrodered wth divers workes, for pouncing or searing their skyns wth a kind of Instrument heated in the fier, they figure therin flowers and fruits of sondry lively kinds as also snakes, Serpents Eftes &c. and this they dve by droppyng vppon the seared flesh sondry coulers wch rub'd

into the stampe will never be taken awaye agayne because yt will not only be dryed into the flesh but growe therein.

The fashion of wearing their Haype: The weomen play the Barbers

The men shave their haire on the right side very close, keeping a ridge comonly on the Toppe or Crowne like a Coxcomb, for their women w^th^ too shells will grate away the haire into any fashion they please on the left side they were theire haire at full length w^th^ a lock of an ell long, w^ch^ they anoint often w^th^ walnut oyle whereby yt is very sleeke and shynes like a ravens winge sometymes they frye vp their lock w^th^ an artefycyall and well labour=ed knott (iust in the same fashion as I have seene the Carrazzais of Scio and Pera) stuck w^th^ many coullored Gewgawes, as the Casthead, or Browantle of a deare, the hand of their Enemie dryed, Croisett of bright and shyning Copper like the newe moone, many weare the whole Shryne of a hauke stuffed w^th^ the wings abroad, and Buzzards or other ffowles whole wings and to the feathers they will fasten a little rattle about the bignes

of

of the Shape of a Rapier, wch they take from the tayle of a snake and sometymes divers Kynds of shells, hanging loose by small purfleets or threeds that being shaken as they move, they might make a certaine murmuring or whistle=ling noise by gathering wynd, in wch they seeme to take great Jollity and hold yt a kind of bravery.

Their Eare-rings.

Their eares they boare wth wyde holes comon=ly two or three, and in the same they doe hang Chaines of stayned pearle Bracelett of white bone or shredds of copper beaten thine and bright, and waund vp hollowe, and wch a greate pride, certaine ffowles legs Eagles, hawkes, Turkeys &c. wth beast Clawes Beares, Arraha=connes, Squirrels &c. the Clawes thrust through they let hang vpon the Cheeke, to the full viewe and some of their men there be, who will weare, in those holes, a small greene and yellow Cou=loured live snake, neere half a yard in length, wch crawling and lapping himself about his neck oftentimes familiarly he suffereth to kysse his lippes, others weare a dead Ratt tyed by

the tayle, & such like Conundrums.

The Modesty of the weomen at som tymes

The women are in themselves so modest as in the tyme of their sickines, they have great care to be seene abroad, at what tyme they goe apart, and keepe from the men in a severall roome, wch they have for themselves as a kynd of Gynæceum nor will the men at such a tyme presse into ye nurcery where they are.

Their Constitu=tions.

The men are very strong of able bodyes and full of agility accustoming themselves to endure hardnes, to lye in the woods vnder a tree by a small fier in the worst of wynter in frost and snowe, or in the weedes and grasse as in Ambuscado to accomplish their purposes, in the sommer.

Their dispositi=tions.

They are inconstant in every thing but what feare constraineth them to keepe, crafty, tymerous, quick of apprehension, ingenious enough in their owne workes, as maye testifie their weares in which they take their fish, wch are certaine inclosures made of reedes,

and frames in the fashion of a Laborinth or maze
sett a fathome deepe in the water wth divers
chambers or bedds out of wch the entangled
fish cannot returne or gett out being once in
well, maye a great one by chaunce breake the
reedes & so escape, otherwise he remaines a
prey to the fishermen the next lowe water,
wch they fish wth a nett tyed at the end of a
pole, as likewise maye speake for them their
netts, their artefycyall dresing of leather, theire
Cordage, wch they make of their naturall hempe
and flaxe togither, wth their cuning dresing
of that, and preserving the whole yeare great
litches or bundells of the same to be used up-
-on any occasion, and of their girdles wch they
make of Silke grasse, much like St Trauncys
Cordon, their Cloaks of feathers, their bowes
and bow-strings their arrowes. their Crownetts
wth their Reverances weare, and their Queenes
Fascios Crinales, Borders or ffrontalls of white
beades, burrall and Copper, especyally their
boates wch they call Quintans, and are
very shapefull made of one piece of Timber
like the auncyent Monoxylum Navigiū theire

matts and all their household Implements and such like.

Some of them are of disposition fearefull (as I said) and not easily wrought therefore to trust vs or come vnto our ffortt: others againe of them are soe bold and audacyous, as they dare come vnto or ffortt truck and trade with vs, as looke vs in the face, crying all freinds when they have but new done vs a mischief, and when they intend presently againe, yff it lye in their power to doe the like, they are generally covetous of or comodityes, as copper, white beades for their women, hatchetts, of wch we make them poore ones, of Iron howes to pare their Corne ground, knives and such like.

They are soone moved to anger and so malitious, that they seldome forgett an Injury, they are very thievish, and will as closely as they can convey any thing away from vs howbeyt they seldome steale one from another, lest their Conniuers should reveile yt, and so they be pursued & punished, That they are thus feared

yt

yt is certaine, nor lett any man doubt, that the
divell cannot reveile an offence actually comitted.

Caput. 6.

The manner of the Virginian govern=ment their Townes, & hunting their gaming, musique, dauncing.

Although the Country people very barbarous, yet have they amongst them such governement, as that their Magistrates for good Comaunding, and their people for due subiection & obeying ex=cell many places, that would be counted bivill, the forme of their Comon wealth, by what hath already bene declared, you maye well gather to be a monarchall Gouernement where one as Emperour ruleth over many Kings, their chief ruler likewise for the pinte you have heard before how named and from whence, as also yo^u heard the nombre of his Werbances, their forces and his owne discription, you shall nowe vnderstand, how his Kingdome descendeth not to his sonns or Children, but first to his brethren whereof he hath (as yo^u have heard) three and after their decease, to his sisters first to his eldest sister, then to the rest, and after them to the heires male & female of the eldest sister, but

never to the heires of the male.

Ne nor any of his people vnderstand how to expresse theire mynds by any kynds of Letters, to wryte or reade, in barkes of Trees, or any other kynd of waye, wch necessitye or Invention might have instructed them in, as do other Barbarians and some even in these new discoveries, nor have they positive lawes, only the lawe whereby he ruleth is custome, yet when he pleaseth his will is a Lawe. & must be obeyed not only as a King but as half a god, his people esteeme him soe, his inferiour Kings are tyed likewise to rule by like Customes, and have permitted them power of life and death over theire people as their comaund in that nature.

Theire habitations or Townes are for the most pt by the rivers, or not far distant from fresh springs comonly upon a rise of a hill, that they may overlooke the River and take very small thing into view wch stirrs upon the same, their howses are not many in owne towne and those that are stand dispite & scattere

wch out forme of a Street fourr and wyde a sunder.

As for their howses, who knoweth one of them, knoweth them all, even the chief kyngs howse yt self for they be all alike builded one to the other, they are like garden Arbours at best like our Sheppards Cottags made yet handsomely enough through wthout strength or gaynes, of such yong plants as they can pluck up, bow, and make the greene toppes meete togither, in fashion of a round roofe, wch they thatch wth matts throwne over, the walles are made of barkes of trees but then those be principall howses for so many barkes wch goe to the making up of a howse are long tyme of purchasing, in the midst of the howse there is a louer out of wch if smoake issueth, the fier being kept right under, every house comonly hath two dores one before & a posterne, the doores be hung wth matts never locked nor bolted, but only those matts be to turne vpp, or lett fall at pleasure, and their howses are so comonly placed under Covert of trees that the violence of fowle weather, snowe

or

a rayne cannott assalt them, nor the sun in sommer annoye them, and if roofe being co=
=vered, as I say, the wynd is easily kept out, in somuch as they are as warme as stoves albeit very smoakye, wyndowes they have none, but the light comes in at the doore and at the Louer, for should they haue broad & open wyndowes in the quarters of their houses they know not well how vpon any occasion to make them close and let in the light two, for glasse they knowe not (though the Country want not salsodiack enough to make glasse of, and of wch we haue made some stoore in a goodly house sett vp for the same purpose wth all offices and furnaces thereto belonging, a litle wthout the Island where James towne stands) nor haue they lynnen Cloth (albeit they want not neither naturally the materialls for that) pap or such like to dipe in oyle to conveye in as a diaphanick body the light or to keepe out the weather. . . . . .

By theire howses they have sometymes

a scana or high stage raised like a scaffold, of small spelts, reedes or dried Osiers Covered wth matts wch both gives a shadowe and is a shelter and serves for such a Covered place, where men vsed in old tyme to sitt and talke for recreation or pleasure wch they called Prostega and where one a loft of hurdells they laye forth their corne and fish to dry they eate sleepe and dresse theire meate all vnder one roofe and in one Chamber as yt were

Round about the house, on both sides are there bedesteedes wch are thick short posts stalk't into the ground, a foot high and somewhat more & for the sydes small poles layed along wth a bundell of reedes cast over, wherein they rowle downe a fyne white matte or twoo (as for a bedd) when they goe to sleepe, and the wch they rowle vp againe in the morning when they rise, as we doe our Pallets & vpon these rownd about the house, they lye, heads & poynts, one by the other especially making

a fier before them in the midst of the howse as they doe vsually every night, and some one of them by agreement, maynteynes the fier for all that night long some of them when they lie downe to sleepe, cover them wth matts some wth skynns, and some lye stark naked on the ground from six to twentye in a house, as doe the Irish.

About their houses they have comonly square plotts of cleered ground, wch serue them for gardens, some 100 some 200 foote square, wherein they sowe their Tobacco, Pumpi=ons and a fruit like vnto a musk million, but lesse and worsse wch they call Macock Gourds, and such like, wch fruicts increase exceedingly, and ripen in the beginning of July & continue vntill Sektember. they plant also the ffield apple the Maracock a wyld fruit like a kynd of Pomgranett wch increaseth infinitelye and ripens in August, contynuing vntill the end of October when all the other fruicts be gathered, but they sowe neither herb, flower, nor any

other kynd of fruict.

They neither ympale for deare nor breed cattell nor bring vp tame poultry, albeit they haue great store of Turkies, nor keepe birdes, squirrells, nor tame partridge Swan Duck nor Goose. In March and Aprill they live much vpon their weeres and feed on fish, Turkies, and Squirrells, And then as also sometymes in May they plant their fields and sett their corne, and live after those monthes most of Acrons, walnutts, Chesnutts, Chechingpramins & fish, but to mend their dyett some dispse themselues in smale Com-panyes, and live vppon such beastes as they can kyll wth their bow and arrowes, vpon Crabbs, Oysters, land tortoyses, Straw-berryes Mulberries and such like. In June, July, and August they feed vpon rootes of Tockahow berries, growne nutts fish and greene wheate, and sometyme vppon a greene Serpent, or greene Snake of wch. our people likewise vse to eate.

It

It is straung to see, how their bodies alter wth their dyett even as the deare and wild beastes they seeme fat & leane strong and weake. Sowhatan and some others, that are provident, roast their ffish and flesh vpon hurdells and reserve of the same, vntill the scarse tymes comonly the fish and flesh they boyle either very tenderly or broyle yt long on hurdells over the fier or ells (after the spanish fashion) putt yt on a spitt & turne first the one side then the other, till yt be as dry as their Jerkin beef in the West Indies, and so they maye keepe yt a monethe or more wthout putryfying, the broath of fish or flesh they suppe vp as ordinarily as they eate the meate.

The Corne they eate in the eares greene, rosted, and sometyme bruising yt in a morter of wood wth a litle pestle they lap yt in Rowlls wthin the leaves of the Corne, and so boyle yt for a daynties, they also reserve that Corne late planted that will not ripe, by roasting yt in hoat ashes, the wch in winter being boyled wth beanes) they esteeme for a

rare dish calling yt Pausaraumena, their old wheat they first steepe a night in hot water, and in the morninge pounding yt in a morter they vse a small baskett for the boulter or searser, and when they have syfted the finest, they pound againe the great, and so sepating yt by dashing their hand in the bas=
=kett, receave the flowr in a platter of wood, wch blending wt water, they make into flatt broad Cakes (much like the sacrificing bread wch the Grecians offred to their Gods called Popanū) and these they call Appones wch covering wth ashes till they be baked (as was the ancyent Eschantos Panis raked wch in the Embers) and then washing them in faire water, they let dry, wth their owne heat or ells boyle them wch water, eating the broath wth the bread wch they call Ponepope, the growtes and broken peec of the corne re=
=mainyng, they likewise reserve, and by fann=
=yng away the branne or huskes in a platter or in the wynd, they let boyle in an earthern pott 3 or 4 howers, and therof make a shāung thick pottage, wch they call Vsheteharnuin, and

is their kind of frumentry and indeed is like our kind of Ptisane husked barley, sodden in water yt maye be not much vnlike that homely Ius Nigrum, wch the Lacidemonians wed to eate, and wch Dionisius could not abide to tast of, albeit he bought a Cooke from thence only to make him that broath, for wch the Cooke told him he must haue a Lacedemonian stomach indeed to eate of the Lacedemonian dyett, and some of them more thriftye then cleanly doe burne the coare of the eare to powder wch they call Pungnough, mingling that in their meale, but yt never tasted well in bread or broath.

Their drinck is as the Turkes cleere water, for albeit they haue grapes, and those good stoore, yet they haue not falne vpon the vse of them, nor advised how to presse them into wyne peares and apples they haue none to make Syder or Perry of, nor honye to make meath nor Licoris to soeth in their water, they call all things that haue a spicy tast Wassacan wch leaues a supposition, that they maie haue some kind of spice trees, though not happyn such as ellswhere.

The men bestow their tymes in fishing, hunting, warres and such manlike exercises wthout the dores scorninge to be seene in any effemynate labour wch is the cause that the women be very painfull and the men often idle.

Their fishing is much in boats these they call Quintans, as the West Indians call their Canvas, they make them wth one tree, by burning and scraping awaye the coales wth stones and shells, tyll they have made them in forme of a trough, some of them are an ell deeper and 40 or 50 foote in length and some will transport 40. men, but the most ordinary are smaller and will ferry 10. or 20. wth some Luggage, over their broadest rivers in stead of oares they vse paddles and sticks, wch they will rowe faster then we in our barges.

They have netts for fishing for the quantity as formerly brayed and masked as ours, and these are made of Barkes of certaine Trees, deare synewes, for a kynd of grasse, wch they call Pem=menaw, of wch their women betweene their

hands

hands and thighes ffrõ a threed very even and redily, and this threed serveth for many vses, as about their howsing, their mantells of feathers and their Trowses and they also wch yt make lynes for Angles.

Theire Angles are long small rodds at the end whereof they have a clift to the wch the lyne is fastened and at the lyne they hang a hooke, made eyther of a bone grated (as they nock their arrowes) in the forme of a ~~bone~~ crooked poynne or fishooke, or of the splinter of a bone, and wth a threed of the lyne, they tye on the bayte, they vse also long arrowes tyed in a lyne, wherewth they shoote at fish in the Rivers, those of Accowmak vse staves like vnto Jaueline headed wth bone, wth these they dart fish, swymming in the water, they haue also many artificiall weeres (before described) in wch they take aboundaunce of fishe.

In the tyme of their huntings, they leave their habitations and gather themselues into Companyes,

as doe the Tartars, and goe to the most desart places, wch their families, where they passe the tyme wch hunting & fowling vp towardes the Mountaines by the heades of their Rivers wher in deed there is plentye of game, for betwixt the Rivers the land is not so large belowe that therein breed sufficyent to give them all Content, considering especyally, how at all tymes and seasons they destroy them yt maye seeme a marveyle, how they can so directly passe and wander in these desartt sometymes three or fower dayes journyes meeting wth no habi=tacons, and by reason of the woodes not having sight of the Sun, whereby to direct them how to coast yt.

Theire huntinge howses are not soe labour=ed, substancyall nor artyficyall as their other but are like our soldiers Cabins, the frame sett vp in two or three howers, cast over head wch matts wch the women beare after them as they carry likewise Corne, Acornes, Mortars, and all bay and baggage to vse when they come to the place, where they purpose for the tyme

to hunt.

In the tyme of hunting every man will strive to doe his best to shew his fortune and dexterity, for by their excelling therein they ob=tayne the favour of the women.

At their hunting in the desarts they are comonly too or three hundred togither, wch the Sun riding they call vp on an other and goe forth searching after the heard, wch when they have found they environ & circle wth many fiers, and betwixt the fiers they place them selves, and there take vp their stands, making the most terrible noise that they can, the deare being thus feared by the fires and their voices betake them to their heeles, whome they Chase so long wth in that Circle, that many tymes they kill 6. 8. 10. or 15. in a morning, they vse also to drive them into some narrow point of land, when they find that advantage, and so force them into the River, where wth their boats they have Ambuscadoes to kill them, when they have shott a deare by land

they followe him (like bloodhounds) like the blood & straine and oftentymes so take him, Hares, Partriges, Turkeys, fatt or leane, yong or old, in eggs in breeding tyme, or howeuer they devour, at no tyme sparing any that they can catch in their power.

On Sauadge hunting alone vseth the skynne of a deare slitt in the one syde, and so put vpon his arme through the neck in that sort, that the hand comes to ye head, wch is stuffed & the hornes, head, eyes, eares & eudy part as arteficyall counterfeited as they can deuise, thus shrowding his body in the Skynne by stalking he approacheth the deere creeping on the ground from one tree to another if the deare chaunce to find fault or stand at gaze, he turneth the head wth the hand to the best advantage to win his shoot, having shott him, he chaseth him by his blood & straine till he gett him.

In these huntinge and fishing exercizes they take extreame paines, and they bring their

their ordinary labours from their Infancy, they place them amongst their sportt and pleasures and are very prowd to be expert therein, for thereby (as before remembred) they wyn the loves of their women who wilbe the sooner contented to live wth such a man by the readynes and fortune of whose Bow & diligence, such provision they preceave they are likely to be fedd wth well especially of fish and flesh, as the place where they are to dwell can afford for (indeed) they be all of them hugh Eaters as of whome we maye saye with Plautus Noctes diesq; estur, for wch we our selves doe give vnto every Indian that labowres wth vs in our ffortt, doble the allowaunce of one of our owne men, and these active hunters by their Conty=nuall ranging and travell, do knowe all the advan=tages, and places most frequented and best stored wth deare, or other beastt ffish, fowle, Roott, fruictt and berries.

A kynd of exercise they haue often amongest them much like that, wch our Boyes call Bandy in English, and maye be an auncyent game, as yt seemeth in Virgill for when Æneas, came

into Italy at his Marriage wth Lauinia, king Lati=
=nus daughter, yt is said the Troyans taught the
Latins scipping & frisking at the Ball. like wise
they haue the exercise of ffoot ball, in wch they only
forceably encounter wth the foot to carry the Ball
the one from the other, and spurne yt to the goale
wth a kind of dexterity, & swift footmanship, wch
is the honour of yt, but they never strike vp
one anothers heeles, as we doe, not accompting
that praise worthie to purchase a goale by such
an advantage.

Dice play, or Cardes or bottl they knowe not,
how be it they vse a game vpon ruffles much
like Primero, wherin they Card and discard,
and lay a stake two, and so win & loose, they
will playe at this for their Bowes & arrowes,
their Copper beads, hatchetts, and their leather
Coatts.

If any great Comaunder arrive at the habitacon
of a Werowance, they spredd a matt as the Turkes
do a Carpett for him to sitt vppon, vppon ano=
=ther right opposite they sitt themselves, then doe

they all wth a tunable voice of showting bid him welcome, after this doe twoo or more of the chief men make severall orations, testifying their love, wch they doe wth such vehemency, and so great earnestnes of passion that they sweat till they droppe, and are so out of breath that they can scarse speake, in so much as a stranger would take them to be exceeding angry or starke mad: after this verball entertaynement, they cause such victuall as they have or can pride to be brought fourth, wth wch they feast him fully and freely, and at night they bring him to the Lodging appointed for him, whither vpon their departure, they send a young woman, fresh paynted red wth Pochonc and oyle to be his bedfellowe.

The void tyme betweene their sleepe and meale they comonly bestow in revelling, daunsing, and singing, and in their kind of Musique, and have sondry Instrumts for the same, They have a kynd of Cane on wch they pype as on a recorder, and are like the greeke pypes, wch they called Bombyces, being hardly to be sounded wthout

great straynyng of the breath, vpon wch they observe certaine rude tunes but their chief Instrumentf are Rattles made of small Gourdes, or Pumpeon shells, of these they have base, tenor, Counterteno^{r}, meane & treble, these myngled wth their voices sometymes 20. or 30. togither, make such a terrible howling, as would rather affright then give pleasure to any man.

They have likewise their erroticа carmina or amorous dittyes in their language, some nu=merous & some not wch they will sing tunable enough, they have contrived a kind of angry song against vs, in their homely rymes, wch concludeth wth a kynd of Petition vnto their Okeus, and to all the host, of their Idolls, to plague the Tassantasses. (for so the call vs) and their posteritie, as likewise another scornefull song they made of vs the last yeare, at the Falls in manner of Tryumph at what tyme they killed Capt: William West. our Lord Generalls nephew, and two or three more, and tooke one Symon Skore a saylor, and one Cob a boy pri=soners, that song goeth thus.

1. Matanerew shashashewaw erawango pechecoma
whe Tassantassa inoshashawyehockan potosack,
whe whe yah haka, neke, wittowa, wittowa.

2. Matanerew shashashewaw erawango pechecoma
Capt. Newport inoshashaw neir in hoc natian matassan
whe. ishe &c.

3. Matanerew shashashewaw erawango pechecoma
Thom: Newport inoshashaw neir in hoc natian moncock:
whe. whe &c.

4. Matanerew shashashewaw erawango pechecoma
Pockin Simon moshashaw mingon natian monahäch
whe whe. &c.-

wch maye signifie how they killed vs, for all our
Poccasacks, i.t is our guns, and for all that Capt.
Newport (as boy whose name in deed was Thom:
Sauadge, who Capt Newport leaving wth Powhatan,
to learne the language, at what tyme he presented
the said Powhatan wth a Copper Crowne, & other
gifts from his mtie said he was his sonne) for
all his Monachock, that is his bright sword,

and how they could take Symon (for they seldome
ad or Surname) prisoner for all his Tamahauke,
that is his hatchet, adding as for a burden vnto
their song, what lamentation & people made when
they kild him, namely saying how they would
cry whe whe, &c. wch they mockt vs for and cryed
again to vs yah ha, ha, Tewttawa Tewittawa,
for yt is true they never bemoane themselues nor
cry out, giving vp so much as a groane for any
death how cruell soever and full of torment

As for their dauncing the sport seemes vnto
them, and the vse almost as frequent and necessary
as their meat & drynck in wch they Consume
much tyme, and for wch they appoint many and
often meetings and haue therefore as yt were
set orgies, or festivalls for the same pastyme, as
have yet at this daye the merry Greekes wthin
the Arches: at & Colonies first sitting downe
amongest them, when any of & people repaired
to their Townes, the Indians would not thinck
they had expressed their welcome sufficyentlie
enough vntill they had shewed them a dauncc.
the manner of wch is thus. One of them standeth

by wch some furre or leather thing in his leaft hand, vpon wch he beats wth his right hand and singes wthall, as if he began the Diuer & kept vnto the rest their iust tyme, when vpon a certaine stroak or word (as vpon his Cue or tyme to come in) One riseth vp and begynns to daunce; after he hath daunced a while stepps forth another, as if he came in iust vpon his rest, and in this order all of them so many as there be one after another, who then daunce an equall distaunce from each other in ring, showting, howling, and stamping their feete against the ground wth such force and paine that they sweat againe, and wth all variety of strang mynick tricks and distorted faces making so confused a yell and noyse as so many frantique and disquieted Bacchanalls. and sure they will keepe stroak iust wth their feete to the tyme he gives, and iuft one wch another, but wth the hands head face and body every one hath a severall gesture as who haue seene the Dauises in their holy daunes in their Moscas vpon wendsedayes and frydayes in Turkey maye resemble these vnto them, you shall find the manner expressed in the figure in the second decade Capt.

Every weroance knoweth his owne meeres & bymitts to fish fowle or hunt in (as before said) but they hold all of their great weroane Powha=tan, vnto whome they pay 8 parts of 10. tri=bute of all the Comodities, wch their Country yeldeth, as of wheat, Pease, beanes, & measures of ten (and those measured out in litle Cades or baskells wch the great king appoints) of the dryed roots & measures of ten, of all sorts of skyns and ffurrs & of 10 and so he robbes the people in effect of all they have even to the deares skyn wherewth they cover them from cold, in so much as they dare not dresse yt and put yt on vntill he have seene yt, and refused yt, for what he comaundeth they dare not disobey in the lest thinge.

Caput. 7.

Of the Religiõn amongst the Inhabitantz, their god, their Temples, their opinion of the creation of the world, & of the ymmortality of the Soule. Of their conivrations, and sacrificing of children.

There is yet in Virginia no place discovered to be so savadge and simple, in wch the Inhabitantz have not a religiõn, and the vse of Bow and arrowes: all things they conceave able to do them hurt, beyond their prevention, they adore wth their kind of divine worp. as the fier, water, lightning, thunder, our Ordinaunce pieces, horses &c, but their chief god they worp. is no other indeed than the Divell, whome they make presentmentz of, and shadow vnder the forme of an Idoll, wch they entitle Okeus. and whome they worp as the Romans did their hurtfull god Veiouis, more feare of harme then hope of any good, they saie they have conference wth him, and fashiõn themselves in their disguisementz as neere to

his shape as they can Imagyn.

In every territory of a Werowance is a Temple and a priest (adventure 2. or 3. yet happie doth that Werowance accompt himself who can detayne w^th^ him a Quiyoughquisock, of the best, grave, lucky, well instructed in their misteryes and beloved of their god, and such a one is noe lesse honoured then was Dianaes priest at Ephesus, for wherne they have their more private Temples w^th^ Oratories and Chauncells therein, accordinge as is the dignity and reverence of the Quiyoughquisock, w^th^ the Werowance, wilbe at Charge to build vpon purpose somelyme 20 foot broad and a hundred in length fashioned Arbour wyse after their buylding, having comonly the dore opening into the east, and at the west end a spence or Chauncell from the body of the Temple, w^th^ hollow wyndings and pillers, whereon stand divers black Imagies fashioned to the shoulders w^th^ their faces looking downe the Church, and where w^th^ in their Werowances, vpon a kind of beere of reedes, lye buryed, and vnder them apart in a vault lowe in the ground (as a more

secrett thing) vailed wth a matt like their Okeus, an Image ill favouredly carved all black, dreſsed wth Chaynes of perle, the pſentment and figure of that god (say the Priestꝛ vnto the Laity, and who religiously believe what they Priestꝛ saie) wch doth them all the harme they suffer be yt in their bodies or goodꝛ wthin dooꝛs or abroad, and true yt is many of them are divers tymes (especyally offendoꝛs) shrewdly scratched as they walke alone in the woodꝛ, yt may well be by the subtyle spirit the malitious enemy to mankind whome therfore to pacefie, and worke to doe them good (at least no harme) the Priestꝛ tell them they must doe these and these Sacrifices vnto of these and these things, and thus and thus often, by wch meanes not only their owne children but Straungers are sometymes sacrificed vnto him: whilst the great god (the priestꝛ tell them) who governes all the world and makes the Sun to shine, creating the Moone and Starrs his Companyons, great powers, and wch dwell wth him, and by whose vertues and influences, the vnder earth is tempered, and bringe forth her fruitꝛ according to her seasons, they calling Abone, the good

and peacable god requires no such duttyes, nor needes be sacrificed vnto, for he intendeth all good vnto them, and will doe noe harme, only the displeased Okens looking into all mens accons, and examining the same according to the severe scale of Justice, punisheth them wth sicknesses beats them and strikes their ripe Corne wth blasting stormes and thunderclapps, stirrs vp warre, and makes their woman falce vnto them, such is the misery and thraldome vnder wch Sathan, hath bound these wretched miscreants.

Indeed their priests being the ministers of Sathan (who is very likely or visibly conversant amongst them) feare and tremble lest the knowledg of god and of our Saviour Jesus Christ should be taught in those partts, doe now wth the more vehemency ppswade the people to hold on their wonted Ceremonies, and every yeare to sacrifice still their owne Childrene, to the ancyent god of their fathers, and yt is supposed gayne doble oblations this waye, by reason they doe at all tymes so

absolutely governe and direct the Weroances, or Lords of Countries in all their accons, and this Custome he hath politiquely mayntayned and doth yet vniversally (a few places excepted) over all the Indies. In Florida they sacrifice the first borne male child: In Mexico they forbeare their owne, and offer vp such prisoners as they take in the warrs, whome they torture, w^th a most barbarous cruelty that the Devill hath obtayned the vse of the like offring in many other partes of America, Acosta hath observed and related in his morrall and naturall History of the West Indies, the same honour the Devill obtayned from all antiquity in effect even from the Israelites and their borderers from the Carthaginians, Persians, and the first Planters of Italy and other Nations, to have suffred still therefore methinks these priests of Baallor Belzebub were greatly offensive to the Ma^tie of god and most pilous for the Englishe to inhabite w^th in those partes for these their Quiyoughquisocks or Prophetts be they that pswade theire Weroances to resist our settlement, and tell them how much their Okeus wilbe offended w^th them, and that he will not be

appeased wth a sacrifice of a thowsand nay a Hecatomb of their Childrene, yf they p̄mitt a Nation̄ dispicing the ancyent Religion̄ of their forefathers to inhabite among them, since their owne godz have hitherto preserved them̄ and given them victory over their Enemies from age to age.

It is true that hitherto our Colony hath consisted (as yt were) but of a handfull of men̄ and not stored wth desired Victualls, fitt for such eaters as the English are, nor till 1610 hath yt ben the best governed, to undertake this service to god, but now the Comoditeyes of our owne Country, being thither in some good quantety transported and those there thriving and growing daily into good increase as Kyne Goatz Swyne, Horses, Mares &c and the first ragged governem̄t nowe likewise prudentlie chaunged into an absolute comaund and over the same many learned and inditious gentlemen of his Mat̄ Councell (as a body politique) resident in England, and they also enlightened from the Supreme understanding of his Mat̄ privy Councell, and the Lord Generall now to goe againe is a very worthy valiant

noble man and well instructed in the busines,
who hath Sr Tho: Gates Lieutenant Generall (whose
Comendacon lyeth in his name) Sr Tho: Dale Marshall,
both there at this ꝑnte, informing themselves of the
Country and people, both excellent Soldiers, and well
knowing all Circumstances of warre, and advantage
of ground, yt cannot be doubted, but that all things
shalbe soe foreseene, that the best Courses shalbe
taken and the surreptiõn of these priests more
seriously thought on then heartofore, and by whose
apprehensiõn wilbe wrought the safety of such
our people as shalbe ymployed herein for his
Mats honour, and the enlargment of his Dominiõn
for whose sake God will prosper all o[r] lawfull
and Christian attempts, yet noe Spanish Intentiõn
shalbe entertayned by vs neither hereby to
root out the Naturalls as the Spaniards have
done in Hisponiola & other ꝑts but only to take
from them these Seducers, vntill when they
will never knowe god nor obey the Kinge Mats
and by wch meanes we shall by degrees
chaunge their barbarous Natures, make them
ashamed the sooner of their savadge nakednes,
infoeme them of the true god and of the way

to their Salvation, and finally teach them obedience to the Kinge Ma^tie and to his Governours in those partes declaring (in the Attempt therof) vnto the severall Weroances, and making the Comon people likewise to vnderstand, how that his Ma^tie hath bene acquainted, that the men women and Childrene of the first plantation at Roanoak were by practize and Comaundem^t of Powhatan (he himself pswaded thereunto by his priestes) miserably slaughtered, w^th out any offence given him either by the first planted (who 20 and od yeares had peaceably lyved, intermixt w^th those Salvages and were out of his Territory) or by those who nowe are come to inhabite some parte of his desarte Landes, and to trade w^th him for some Comodityes of ours, w^ch he and his people stand in want of, notw^th standing because his Ma^tie is of all the world, the most iust, and the most mercifull prince, he hath given order that Powhatan himself w^th the Weroances and all the people shalbe spared, and revenge only taken vpon his Quiyoughquisocks, by whose advise and pswasions was exercised that bloudy Cruelty, and only how that Powhatan

himself, and the Weroances must depend on his
Ma^tie both acknowledging him for their supiall
Lord, and whervnto the inferiour Weroances sure
will most willingly condiscend, when yt shalbe
told them, that wheras Powhatan doth at his pleasure
dispoile them both of their lives and goodz w^ch out
yeilding them any reason, or alleadging, or proving
any iust cause against them, they shall for here-
-after be deliuered from his Tyranny, and shall
enioye freely the fruicte of their owne Territories,
so shall they the fish and the fowle thereof, of w^ch
the most rare and delicate of the one, and the best
and wholesomest of the other are now forbidden
them, and reserved and preserved to Powhatan,
and that they shall be freed likewise from
deliuering vp their Children for sacrifice, and
the poore womens songz of Lamentation converted
into reioycingz, the true god and his Governour
King James comaunding that the Childreene of
men be preserved and not slaughtered w^ch out
offence giuen, as the Deuill and his Quiyough-
-quisocks have ordeyned; Against w^ch Sathani-
-call Invention, may it please his Ma^tie to
make an ordinaunce, that the fathers of those

Childrene and all who consent vnto the sacrifices here-
after shalbe put to death, as Traytors to god and
his Ma^tie, as also when they shall vnderstand,
how the tribute w^ch they shall pay vnto his
Ma^tie shalbe. far leasse then that w^ch Powhatan
exacteth from them, who robbs them as you have
heard of all they have; but after such tyme as
they shall submitt themselves to the Kinge
Ma^tie and Consent to pay him a tribute to be
agreed vpon, Powhatan shall lay no more his
exactions vpon them, but they shall freely enioy
all they can gather, and have a peaceable and
franck trade, w^th the English for the Comodities
they can make of their owne exchaunging them
for ours and that the English will take of their
poorest into their families, as their better sort
shall by Patents and p^clamations hold their
Lands as free burgers and Citizens w^th the
English and Subiects to King James, who will
give them Justice and defend them against
all their enemyes whereas now they live in
miserable slavery and have no assurance either
of their lyves or of their goods, and indeed
hereby these dooble and mixt Comodities will

arrise, namely the English Garrisons shall not only be provided of Corne, and their storehowses of Marchandizes, but the Naturalls being thus constrayned to pay duly this their trybute, will clense dowble asmuch grownd as they doe wherby the Country will not only be made the more passeable both for horse and foot, but the people themselves, who are now for the most part of the yeare idle, and doe little ells then sharpen their arrowes against the English, shall find by the gathering togither of their severall sorts of Tribute some what ells to entertayne themselves wth all and although peradventure this maye seeme a burthen at the first, vntill they have acquainted themselves wth another kind of life, and perceave themselves indeed to become thereby the more Civile, as likewise to enioy the rest of their owne more freely then vnder Powhatan, they will find themselues in farr better estate then now they are: for the Cubiguas or Comaunders of Indian townes in Peru, whom the Virginians call Weroances, although they paye vnto the King of Spaine great Tribute, yet because they make exchaunge wth the

Spaniard for that remaynes, they doe not only keepe greate hospitality, and are rich in their furniture, horses, and Cattell, but as Capt. Ellis avowes who lyved amongst them some few yeares their dyett is served to them in silver vessells and many of them have naturall Spaniards that attend them in their howses when on the otherside the Spaniards were not able to make the twentith part of profitt, w^ch they nowe doe, but by the helpe of those Cufsigues for they furnish out of their severall Territories not so few as 50000 to worke in the mynes of Potasi who after so many monthes Travaile are retorned to their Countryes, and 50000 others by an other Company of Cufsigues provided to supply them In New Spaine they doe the like, for the naturall people gather all the Scuchinella w^ch the Spaniards have, and require no more for a weeks labour, then so much money as will buy them a pott of wyne to drinck drunck the Satterday night: In Guiana 30. of the people w^ch their Canoa wilbe hired for one hatchett to rowe where they are Comaunded for a whole moneth, and sell a hundred weight of good biskett for a threepenny knyfe and if

owr Copper had ben well ordered in Virginia as
maye be hereafter I am assured that lesse then one
ounce will serve to entertayne the labour of a
whole howshould for 10 dayes. This being deli-
vered in fitt termes by some ꝑfect Interpreter
and to men that are capable ynough of vnder-
-standing yt maye begett a facile Concept in
them of vs and our ꝓceedinge, and leave them
well satisfied & indeed be yt beleeved, that when
so iust an occasion shall offer these priestes
of Armodius or the Devill into the handes of
the Lord Generall, a better tyme then that
will not be found to ꝓforme the same accept-
-able service to god that Iehu King of Israell
did when he assembled all the priestes of Baal,
and slue them to the last man in theire owne
Temple, of this may every vulgar sence be
well assured that seeing these monsters doe
offer vp vnto the Devill their owne Childreñe,
and being hardened against all Compassion
naturall and divine enforce their owne mothers
to deliver them to the executioner w^th their owne
handes, they will easily condiscend vnto, and
assist the destruction and extirpacon of all

straungers knowing or acknowledging the true god.

Within the Chauncell of the Temple by the Okeus, are the Cenotaphies or the monuments of their kinge, whose bodies so soon as they be dead they embowell, and scraping the flesh from of the bones, they dry the same vpon Hurdells into Ashes, wch they put into little potts like the auncyent Vrnes: the Annatomy of the bones they bind togither or case vp in leather, hanginge bracelettes, or Chaines of Copper beades pearle or such like as they vsed to weare about most of their Jointes neck, and so repose the body vpon a litle Scaffold (as vpon a Tomb) layinge by the dead bodies feet, all his riches in seuerall basketts his Hpook, and pipe, and any one toy wch in his life he held most deare in his fancy: their Inwardes they stuff wth pearle, Copper, beades and such trash, sewed in a skynne, wch they overlappe againe very carefully in white skynnes one or two, and the bodyes thus dressed lastly they rowle in Matts, as for wyndinge sheets, and so laye them orderly one by one, as they dye in their Turnes, vpon an Arche

standing (as aforesaid) for the Tomb, and thes are all the Ceremonyes we yet can learne that they give vnto their dead, we heare of no sweet oyles or oyntmentz, that they vse to dresse or chest their dead bodies wth, albeit they want not of the pretious Rozzin running out of the great Cedar, wherwth in the old tyme they vsed to embalme dead bodies whashing them in the oyle and licoure therof, only to the priestz the Care of these Temples and holy Interrmentz are Comitted and these Temples are to them as Solitary Apoteria Colledges or Minsters to exercise themselves in Contemplation, for they are seldome out of them and therefore often lye in them and maynteyne contynuall fire in the same vpon a harth somewhat neere the east end.

For their ordinary buriall they digg a deepe hole in the earth wth sharpe stakes, and the Corps being lapped in Skynns & Mattz wth their Jewells, they laye vpon stickz in the ground and soe cover them wth earth, the buryall ended, the women (being painted all their faces wth black Coale and oyle) do sitt 24 howers

in their howses mourning and lamenting by turnes wᵗʰ such yelling and howling as may expresse their great passions.

Their principall Temple or place of superstition is at Vttamussack at Pamunky neere vnto the towne wᶜʰ in the woode is a chief holie house ꝑper to Powhatan vpon the top of certaine red sandy hills, and it is accompanied wᵗʰ 2 other 60 foot in length filled wᵗʰ Images of their Kinge and Devills and Tombes of the predicessors, this place they count solely as that none but the Priestꝛ and Kingꝛ dare come therein, in this (as the Grecian Nigromancers Psychomanthie did vse to call vp spiritts) eyther the Priests have Conference or Consult (indeed) wᵗʰ the Devill and receave verball answeares, and so sayth Acosta he spake to the Boitij or Chaplaines of the West Indies in their Guacas or Oratories, or at least these Coniurers make the simple Laytie so to believe, whoe therefore (so much are the people at the Priestꝛ devotion) are ready to execute any thing how desperate soever, wᶜʰ they shall comaund. The Salvadges

dare not goe vp the River in boats by yt, but that they solemly cast some piece of Copper, white beady or Pochones into the River for feare that Okeus should be offended and revenged of them: In this place Comonly are resident 7. Priests, the chief differing from the rest in his ornament, whilst the inferiour priests can hardly be knowne from the Comon people, save that they had not (it maye be maye not have) so many holes in their eares to hang their Jewells at, the Ornaments of the chief priest was vppon his shoulders a middle sized cloke of feathers much like the old Sacrificing garment w^ch Isodorus calls Casiola, and the Burlett or attire of his head was thus made, some 12. or more snakes sloughes or skyns were stuffed w^th mosse and of weasells or other vermyne were skynns shapps as many all these were tyed by the Tayles so as their tayles meet in the tope of the head like a great Tassell, and round about the Tassell was circled a Crownett (as yt were) of feathers, the skynns hanging round about his head, neck and shoulders, and in a manner covering his face; the face of all their Priests are painted

so vglye as they can devise, in their handꝭ they carry every one his rattle for the most ꝑte as a Symbole of his place and ꝓfessiõn, some bigge, some smaller, their devotion is most in songe, wch the chief priest begynns & the rest follow him sometymes he makes invocation wth broken Sentences by startꝭ and straung passions and at evy pawse the rest of the Priestꝭ give a short groane.

We have not yet hitherto ꝑceaved that any solemne Fasti or Feria precidaneæ Vigilii or any one daye more holy then other is amongst them, but only in some great distresse of want feare of Enemyes, tymes of Triumph, and gathering togither their fruictꝭ, the whole Country, men, women, and Children come togither to their Solempnities, the manner of wch Jolly devotion is sometymes to make a great fier in the house or fieldꝭ, and all to sing and daunce about yt, in a ring like to many Fayries wth rattles and Showtes 4. or 5. howers togither, sometymes fashioning themselves in twoo Companies keeping a great Circuite, one Company daunceth one waye and the other the

contrary, all very finely painted, certaine men going before w^th eyther of them a rattle, other following in the midst, and the rest of the trayne of both wings 4. & 4. and in the Reare certayne of the chiefest yong men w^th long switches in their handes to keepe them in their places after all w^ch followes the Governour or Weroance himself in a more slow or solemne measure stopping and dauncinge, and all singing very tunable.

They have also divers Conjurations, One they made at what tyme they had taken Capt. Smyth. Prisoner to know as they reported, if any more of his Countrymen would arrive there, and what they intended, the manner of yt Capt. Smyth, observed to be as followeth, first so sone as daie was shut in they kindled a faire great fier in a lone howse about w^ch assembled 7. Priestes takinge Capt. Smyth. by the hand, and appointing him his seat, about the fier they made a kynd of enchaunted Circle of meale, that done the chiefest priest, attyred as is expressed gravely began to sing and shake his Rattle, solemly rowonding and marching about the fier, the rest

followed him sylently, vntill his song was done, wch they all shut up wth a groane at the end of the first song the chief Priest laye downe certaine grains of wheat, and so contynued howling and invoking their Okeus to stand firme and powerfull to them in divers varieties of songe, still counting the songe by the graynes vntill they had circled the fier three tymes then they devided the graynes by certaine nomber wth little sticke, all the while muttering some ympious thing vnto themselves, looking vpon Capt. Smyth. in this manner they contynued 10. or 12. howers wthout any other Ceremonies or intermission, wth such violent stretching of their armes, and various passions, Jestures and Symptomes, as might well seem straung to him before whom they so coniured, and who every howre expected to be the Roast and end of their Sacrifice: not any meate did they eat, vntill yt was very late, and the night far spent, about the rising of the morning starr they seemed to have fynished their work of darknes, and then drew forth such provision, as was in the said howse, and feasted themselves & him wth much mayrth, three or fower daies they contynued these elvish Ceremonies:

Now besids these manner of Coniurations thus w^th^ in doores (as we read the Augurers in the old tymes of the like superstition did ascend or goe vp into certaine Towers or high places called therefore Auguracula to diuine of matters, so doe they goe forth, and either vpon some rock standing alone or vpon some desolate Promontory top, or ells into the midst of thick and solitary woodes they call out vpon their Okus and importune their other Quioughcosughas w^th^ most impetious and interminate Clamours, and howling, and w^th^ such payned and strayned accons, as the neighbour places ecchoe againe of the same, and themselves are all in a sweat and ouer wearied.

They have also certayne Aultarstones, w^ch^ they call Pawcoranced, but those stand from their Temples, some by their howses, others in the woodes and Wildernes, vpon these they offer blood, deare suett and Tobacco, and that when they retourned safe from the warrs, luckely from hunting &c vpon many other occasions.

We vnderstand they give great reuerence to

the Sun for wch both at his yearly rising, and late setting they crouch themselves downe, and lift up their hands and eyes and at certaine tymes, make a round circle on the ground wth Tobacco, into wch they reverently enter, and murmure certaine unhallowed wordes wch many a deformed gesture.

They have also another kind of Sorcery wch they use in stormes a kynd of Bocanomantia wch rezbes when the waters are rough in the Rivers and Sea-coasts, their conjurers run to the waters sides, or passing in their Quintans, after many hellish outcryes, and Invocations, they cast Wbesican, Tobacco, Copper, Pocones, or such trash into the water, to pacefie that god whome they thinck to be very angry in those Stormes.

Before their dynners and suppers (as Heliodorus remembers, the Egiptians were wont to doe, when they sate to meate or at Candlelight) the better sort will doe a kind of Sacrifice, taking the first bitt and castinge yt into the fier, and to yt repeat certaine wordes, I have heard Ma-chumps at Sr Tho: Dales table once or twice

(vpon our request) repeat the said Grace as yt were, howbeit I forgot to take yt from him in writinge.

In some part of the Country they have yerely a Sacrifice of Childrē, such a one was at Quiyoughcohanock some tēn miles from James Towne, as also at Kecoughtan, wch Capt. Georg Percy was at & observed, the manner of yt was Sixteene of the fayrest young boyes betweene 10. and 15. yeares of age they painted white, having brought them forth the people spent the forenoone in dauncyng and singing about them wth Rattles; In the afternoone they solemly led those Childrene to a certayne tree appointed for the same purpose at the root whereof round about they made the Childrene to sitt downe, and by them stood the most and the ablest of the men and some of them the fathers of the Childrene as a watchfull Guard, every one having a Bastinado in his hand of Reedes and these opened a lane betweene all along, through wch were appointed 5. young men to fetch those Childrene, and accordingly every one of the 5.

tooke his turne and passed through the Guard to fetch a Child, the Guard fiercely beating them the while wth their Bastinadoes, and shewing much angere displeasure to have the children so ravisht from them: all wch the young men pacyently endured, receaving the blowes and defending the children wth their naked bodies, from the vnmercifull stroakes that paid them soundly, though the Children escaped: All the while sate the mothers and kinswomen a far off looking on, weeping and crying out very passionately, & some in pretty waymenting tunes singing (as yt were) their dirge or funerall song, provided wth Matte, skynns, mosse, and dry wood by them, as things fitting their childrens funeralls. After the Childrene were thus forceably taken from the Guard, and the Guard possessed (as yt were) wth a vyolent fury entred vppon the tree & tore yt downe, bowes and braunches, wth such a terrible fiercenes and strength, that they rent the very body of yt, and shivered yt in a hundred peeces, wherof some of them made them Garlandes for their heades, and some stuck of the braunches and leaves in their hare,

wreathinge them in the same, and so went vp and downe as mourners w^th heavy and sad downe cast lookes, what ells was done w^th the Childrene might not be seene by our people, further then that they were all cast on a heape in a valley where was made a great and solemne feast for all the Companye, at the goyng whereunto the night now approaching, the Indians desired our people that they would w^ch draw themselves and leave them to their further proceedinge, the w^ch they did, only some of the Wroances being demaunded the meaning of this Sacrifice made answeare that the Childrene did not all suffer death, but that the Okees did suck the blood from the leaft breast of the Child whose chaunce yt was to be his by lott, till he were dead, and the remaine were kept in the wilderness by the said young men till 9 moones were expired, during w^ch tyme they must not converse w^th any, and of these were made the Priests and Conjurers, to be instructed by tradition from the elder Priests. Theise Sacrifice or Cathamata they hold to be so

necessary, that if they should omitt them, they suppose this Okeus, and all the other Duiough-cosughes, wch are their other godz, would let them no deare, Turkies, Corne, nor fish and yet besides he would make a great slaughter amongst them, insomuch that if ever the ancyent superstitious tymes feared the Devills postularia Fulgura, lightninge that signified Religion of Sacri-fices and vowes to be neglected, these people are dreadfully afflicted wth the terrour of the like in so much as I maye truly saye therefore, the like Thunder and lightening is seldome againe eyther seene or heard in Europe as is here.

Concerning the ymortallity of the Soule, they suppose that the Comon people shall not live after death, but they thinck that their Wizoances and Priestz indeed whome they esteeme half Duioughcosughes, when their bodyes are laied in the earth that, that wch is wth in shall goe beyond the mountaynes, and travell as farr as where the Sun setts into most pleasant fieldz, grounds and pastures, where

yt shall doe no labour, but stuck finely wth feathers and painted wth oyle and Poconos rest in all quiet and peace and eat dilicious fruicte and have store of Copp beades and hatchette, sing daunce and have all variety of delightes and merryments till that waxe old there, as the body did on earth and then yt shall dissolve and die, & come into a wommans womb againe and so be a new borne vnto the world, not vnlike the heathen Pythagoras his opinyon, and fable of Metempsychosis, nor is this opinion more ridiculous or savage then was the Epicures long since too in tyme of Morality who taught that the sowle of man as of brute beastes was nothing ells, but life or the vitall power arrisinge of the Temperature & ffeccon of the body, and therefore died and extinguished togither wth the body, the sowle so being a meere quality in the body and when the body was to dissolve, the sowle must likewise become nothing, nor is it more hethenous then our Athists who would evain out of Scripture propfanly conclude, no ymortality of the sowle to be wresting that of Solomon who saith,

The condicon of men and Beasts are even as one
not acknowledging their Impious reasoning by
fallacies, concluding that w^ch is in some respect so,
to be symply so, as because their bodies die alike,
therfore the Soule of man must perish too: but
alas well may these heathen be pitied & pitied
vntill they shall be taught better, neither borne
vnder grace, nor of the seed of promise, when
such as professe themselves in their great place
to be our Saviour Christs Chief Vicars, here
vpon earth dare be farr more dissolute, as it
is written of Pawle the third Pope of Rome
when he was breathing out his Soule, and
ready to dye said that now at length he
should try and knowe three things wherof in
his whole tyme he much doubted (viz) whether
there was a God: Secondly whether, Soules
were immortale: and lastly whether there was
any Hell. and Stephanus vpon Herodotus re-
members vs who Pope Leo 10. answered
Cardinall Bembo that alleadged some part of
the Gospell vnto him. Lord Cardinall, what a
wealth this fable of Jesus Christ hath gotten
vs! I say therefore yt maye well seeme lesse

straung, yf amonge these Infidells both the knowledg of our Saviour be questioned, and the ymortality of the Soule not rightly understood: howbeyt to divert them from this blindnes, many of our people have vsed their best Indeavours, Chiefely wth Pepisconnah Werowance of Quiyoughcohanock, whose apprehension & good disposition towardes hath hitherto much exceeded any in those Countryes, wth whom though as yet we have not prevayled to forsake his falce godes, yet this he was wonne to saye, that he believed our god as much exceeded theirs as our Guns did their Bowe and arrowes, and many tymes vpon our peoples first Comyng into the Country, did send to the President at James Towne men. wth presentes, entreating him to pray to his God for rayne, for his godes would not send him any, and in this lamentable Ignorance doe these poore Soules live.

I will conclude these pointes wth opinion of the Indians of Patawomeck river the last yeare 1610 about Christmas when Capt. Argoll was there trading wth Japasus the great King

brother, after many daies of acquayntance wth him at the Pynnace road before the towne Matchoponge, Jopassus comyng aboard and sitting, (the wheather being very cold) by a fire vpon a hearth in the hold wth the Captaine, one of our men was reading of a bible, to wch the Indian gave a very attent eare, and looked wth a very wisht eye vpon him, as if he desired to understand what he read: where vpon the captayne tooke the booke and turned to the picture of the Creation of the world in the begynning of the booke, and caused a boy one Spilman, who had lyved a whole yere wth this Indian King and spak his language, to shewe yt vnto him, and to interprete yt in his language wch the boy did, and wch the King seemed to like well of, howbeit he bad the boy tell the Captayne if he would heare, he would tell him the manner of their begynnyng wch was a pretty fabulous Tale indeed, we have (said he) five gods in all, ye chief god appeares often vnto vs in the likenes of a mighty great hare, the other 4. have no visible shape but are indeed the 4. wyndes wch keepe the 4. Corners of

the earth (and then w^th his hand he seemed to quarter out the scytuation of the world) o^r god who takes vpon him this shape of a hare, conceaved w^th himself, how to people this great world, and w^th what kynd of Creatures, and yt is true (said he) that at length he devised and made diverse men & women and made provision for them, to be kept vp yet a while, in a great bag, nowe there were certayne spiritts, w^ch he described to be like great Giants, w^ch came to the Hares dwelling place (being towards the rising of the Sun) and had preveyance of the men and women w^ch he had put into that great bagg, and they would have had them to eat, but the godlye Hare reproved those Caniball spiritts and drove them awaye, Now if the Boy had asked him of what he made those men and women, and what those spiritts more ꝑticularly had been, and so had proceeded in some order they should have made yt hang togither the better, but the boy was unwilling to question him so many things least he should offend him, only the old man went on, and said, how that godlike hare made the water, and the fish therein, and the Land, and a great

deare, wch should feed vpon the land, at wch assembled the other 4. gods enuyous hereat, from the east the west, from the north and south, and wth hunting poales kild this great deare, deeast him and after they had feasted wth him dotted againe east, west, north & south, at wch the other god in despight for this their mallice to him, tooke all the haires of the slaine deare, and spred them vpon the earth wth many powerfull words and Charmes, whereby every haire became a deare, and then he opened the great bagg, wherein the men and the women were, and placed them vpon the earth a man & a woman in one Country, and a man & a woman in another Country, and so the world tooke his first begynning of mankind. The Captaine bad the boy ask him what became of them after their death to which he answered somewhat like as is expressed before of the Inhabitaunts about vs, how that after they are dead here, they goe vp to a top of a high tree, and there they espie a faire plaine broad path waye, on both sides whereof doth grow all manner of pleasant fruicts as Mulberies Straberies Plombes &c. In this pleasant path they runne toward the rising of the

Sun, where the godly hares howse is, and in the mid-
-way they come to a house where a woman goddesse
doth dwell who hath alwaies her doares open for
hospitality and hath at all tymes ready drest
greene Vfkatahomen & Pokahichory (wch is greene
Corne brused & boyled and walnutts beaten small,
then washed from the shells wth a quantity of
water, wch makes a kind of milke, and wch they
esteeme an extraordinary dish, together wth all
manner of pleasant fruicts in a readines to
entertayne all such as doe travell to the great
hares howse, and when they are well refreshed
they run in this pleasant path to the rising of
the Sun where they find their forefathers lying in
great pleasure, in a goodly field, where they do
nothing but dawnce & sing, and feed on
delitious fruicts wth that great Hare, who is
their great god and when they have lived there
vntill they be starke old men, they saie they
dye there likewise by turnes and come into the
world againe.

Concerning further of the Religion we
have not yet learned, nor indeed shall we ever

know, all the certaintye of these their unhallowed misteries, or of their further orders and policyes, untill we cann make surprize of some of their Quiyoughquisocks.

Caput. 8.

Their manner of wars, and Consultations thereabout, of certain Prophesies amongst them; of Powhatans auncient Enemies, and how they maie be wrought into league w^th^ vs, and turned against him, whereby we maie bring him likewise to be in freindshipp w^th^ vs: of their Bowes, Arrowes and Swordes, Targettes, Drumes: of their phisick and Chirurgerie.

When they intend any Warrs, the Werowances usually advise w^th^ their Priests or Coniurers, their Allies and best trusted Chawncellors and Freinds but Comonly the Priests have the resulting voice, and determyne therefore their resolutions eyther a Weroance or some lusty fellowe is appointed Captaine

over a Nation or regiment to be led forth, and when they would presse a nomber of Soldiers to be ready by a day an officer is dispatcht awaye, who comyng into the townes, or otherwise meeting such whome he hath order to warne, to strike them over the back a sound blow wth a Bastinado, and bidds them be ready to serve the great king, and tells them the Randevous, from whence they dare not at any tyme appointed be absent: they seldome make warrs for Lande or Goods, but for women or Children and principally for revenge so vindicative and Jelous they be, to be made a division of, and to be insulted upon by an enemy.

There be at this tyme certaine Apheresies a foot, amongst the people, enhabiting about us, of wch Powhatan ys not meanly Jelous, and carefull to divert the Construction & danger wch his Priests contynually put him in feare of not long since yt that his Priests told him how that from the Chesapeack Bay a Nation should arise, wch should dissolve & give end to his Empire, for wch not many yeares since

(perplext wth this devilish Oracle and divers under-
-standing thereof) according to the Ancyent and
gentile Customs he destroyed and put to Sword
all such who might lye under any doubtfull
Construccon of the said Prophesie as all the
inhabitantz, the Weronce and his subiects of
that Province and so remaine all the Chefsiopeians
at this daye and for this Cause extinct.

Some of the Inhabitantz againe have not
spared to give vs to understand how they have
a second prophesie likewise amongst them,
that twice they should give overthrowe and
dishearten the Attemptors, and such Straungers
as should invade their Territories or labour to
settle a Plantation among them, but the third
tyme they themselves should fall into their
Subiection & vnder theire Conquest and sure in
the observacon of ye Settlement and the manner
therof hitherto, we maye well suppose, that this
their apprehension, may fully touch at vs,
I leave to expresse the ptculers vnto another
place, albeit let me saie here, Straunge whisperes
(indeed) and secrett at this hower run among these

people, and possesse them wth amazement, what may be the yssue of these straung preparations landed in their Coate, and yearly supplyed wth fresher Troupes, every newes and blast of rumour strykes them to wch they open their eares wyde, and keepe their eyes waking, wth good espiall vpon every thing that stirrs, the noyse of or drums of our shrill Trumpetts & great Ordinaunce terrifies them, so as they startle at the Report of them, how farr soever from the reach of daunger, suspicons have bredd straunge Feares amongst them, and those Feares creat as steaung construccons and those Construccons therefore begett strong watch and Gard especyally about their great Kinge, who thrusts forth trusty skowtes and carefull Sentinells as before mencyoned wch reach even from his owne Court, downe almost to our Palisado gate wch answeare one another duly: many things (whilst they observe vs) are suffred amysse among themselves who were wont to be so servily fearefull to trespasse against their Customes, as yt was a chief point of their Religion not to breake in any, and all this and more then this is thus wth them,

whilst the great Tyrant himself nor his Priests are now Confident in their wonted Courses: Judge all men whether these maye not be the forerunners of an Alteration of the Devills Empire here? I hope they be nay I dare prognosticate that they usher great Accydents, and that we shall effect them; the divine power assist us in this worke wch begun for heavenly ends may have as heavenly Period.

Powhatan had many Enemies especially in the westerly Countryes before we made our Forts and habitations soe neere the Falls but now the generall Cause hath united them, and the poore power of their mallice they contend to power upon us: beyond the Mountaynes and at the heads of the Rivers upon the head of the Powhatans are the Monacans, whose chief habitacon is at Rapawek unto whome the Mowhemenchuges, the Massinacacks, the Monnahasanughes, and other Nations pay tribute, and the Monacans as I said have been deadly enemyes ever unto Powhatan and maye easily be ioyned frindship wth us to be so againe, untill when ever we shall have Powhatan at these prowd and insolent termes

at wch he now standes and therfore yt was most considerably and directly advised by one of good place, and great knowledg, and by long experience trayned in the managing of busines of this Nature, when Sr. Tho: Gates went over sole Governour May 1609 that we should endeavor what all Envaders and Planters seeke out, namely to knowe and entertayne the bordering Enemye of that Nation, whom we shall be forced by our sitting downe amongst them out of many offred occasions to offend and Constraine, for who can be Ignorant saith he, that there was never any Invasyon Conquest or Sor of Plantation, that had succesce wthout some ptie in the place yt self or neere yt: Witnes all the Conquestes made in thise our partes of the world, and all that the Spaniards have pformed in America: yt cannot but appeare to all men of Judgment, essensyallie neccesary for our Colony to get knowledg or make friendship (as conveniently as yt may, wth as many of the Werowances, wch border and make warr wth Powhatan as yt can), against whome, or against whose people, yf we should fynd cause now or hereafter to use violence, there is no man

among themselves so savage or not capable of so much sence but that he will approve or cause, when he shalbe made to vnderstand, that Powhatan hath slaughtered so many of our Nation wth out offence giuen, and such as were seated far from him, and in the Territory of those Weroances wch did in no sort depend on him or acknowledg him: but yt hath ben Powhatans great care to keepe vs by all meanes from the Acquaintaunce of those Nations that border and confront him, for besides his knowledge how easely and willingly his enemies wilbe drawne vpon him by the least Countenance and encouragement from vs, he doth by keeping vs from trading wth them Monopolize all the Copper brought into Virginia, by the English: And wheras the English are now content, to receave in exchaunge a few measures of Corne for a great deale of that Mettell (valuyng yt according to the extreame price yt beares wth them, not to the estymacon yt hath wth vs) Powhatan doth againe vent some small quantity thereof to his neighbour Nations, for 100 tyme the value, reserving notwthstanding for himself a

plentifull quantety to leavy men w^th all when he shall find Cause to vse them against vs, for the before remembered Weroance of Passpahegh did once wage 14. or 15. Weroances to assist him in the attempt vpon the Fort of James Iowne, for one Copper plate promised to each Weroance.

Beyond the springs of the River Tappahanock (the second from Powhatan) is a people called Mannahoaks, to these are Contributory the Tanx-nitanians, the Schackaconias. the Out parkas, the Tegneas, the Whonkentias, the Stegaras the Hasinugas, and divers others, all Confederate w^th the Monacans, though many of them different in Language and very barbarous, living for the most pt vpon wild beasts and fruicts, and have likewise assisted the Monacans, in tymes past, against Powhatan, and maie also by vs be dealt w^th all and taken into freindship, as opportunity and meanes shall afford.

Beyond the Mountaines from whence is the head of the River Pataswomeck do inhabite the Mastawomecks (Powhatans yet mostall

Enemies) vpon a great salt water w^ch by all likely hood may either be some part of Canada, some great Lake, or some Inlett of some Sea that may fall into the West Ocean or Mardelzur. These Massawomecks are a great Nation and very populous, for the Inhabitants of the Heads of all those Rivers especyally the Patawomecks, the Rawtawnts, the Sasquesahanoughes, the Tockwoghs are contynually harbored and frighted by them; of whose cruelty the said people generally complained, and were very ymportunate w^th Capt. Smyth and his Company in the tyme of their Discovery to free them from those tormentors, to w^ch purpose they offred food, Conduct, Assistants, and contynuall subiection, w^ch were motives sufficyent for Capt. Smyth to promise to returne w^th sufficyent forces to constraine the said Massawomecks: but there were in the Colony at that tyme such factions and base envyes, as malice in some, in some ignorance, and Cowardize in others, made that oportunity to be lost, 7. boats full of these Massawomecks, the discovers before mentioned encountred at the Head of the Bay, whose Targetts, Basketts,

Swords, Tobacco-pipes, Platters, Bowes and Arrowes, and ev^ry thing shewed they much exceeded them of our pts, and their dexterity in their severall boats, made of the Barkes of Trees sewed togither, and well luted w^th the Gum and Rosin of the Pine tree argueth that they are seated vpon some great water, of these likewise it may please the Lord Generall againe to enforme himself, as Circumstance and occasion shall serue to turne against Powhatan.

I graunt that such the new Inhabitants who now people Chesapeak againe (the old extinguished as yo^u have heard vpon the Conceipt of a prophesie) togither w^th the Weroances of Nandsamund, Warraskoyak, & Weanock, are now at peace w^th him, howbeit they may p^adventure be drawne from him for some rownd Rewards and a plentifull p^mise of Copper, thus much (and not unnecessarily) digressed.

Their weapons for offence are bowes and arrowes, & wodden Swords, for defence Targetts the bowes are of some young plant eyther of

the Locust-tree or of weeck wch they bring to the forme of ours, by the scraping of a Shell, and give them stringe of a Stagge gutt or thong of a deares-hide twisted, their arrowes are made some of streight young spriggs wch they head wth bone, two or three Inches long, and these they use to shoot at Squirrells and all kind of fowle, another sort of arrowes they use made of Reedes these are peeced wth wood, headed wth splinters of Cristall, or some sharp stone, wth the spurrs of a Turkey-cock or the bill of some bird, feathred wth a Turkeys feather, wth wch a knife (made of the splinter of a reed) wch he will make as sharp as a Surgeons Gennott, he cutts him into forme, and wth wch knife also he will ioynt a deare, or any beast shape his sandalls, buskins, mantell &c to make the notch of his arrowe he hath the tooth of a Bever sett in a stick, where wth he gratteth yt by degrees, his arrowe hedd he quickly maketh wth a little bone, wch he ever weareth at his bracer, and wch bracer is comonly of some beasts skynne eyther of the woolf, Badger, or black Fox &, of any splint of a stone, or peece of a deares bone, of an oyster shell, or of Cristall, in the forme

of a heart barb'd and iagged, and these they glue to the end of their arrowes wth the synowes of deare and the topps of deares horne boyled into a Jelly, of wch they make a glue, that will not dissolve in cold water, 40. yards will they shoot levell, or very neere the marke, & 120. is their best at Randon.

Their swordes be made of a kind of heavy wood, wch they have much like such woodden Instrumente as our English woman swingle their Flax wth all, and wch they call Monococks, as the Salvadges in Bariena in the West Indies call their Macanas, & be alike made, but often tymes they vse for swordes the horne of a deare, put through a peice of wood in forme of a pickaxe: some vse a long stone sharpened at both ende, thrust through a handle of wood in the same manner, and these last they were wont to vse in stead of hatchette, to fell a tree or cut any massy thing in sunder, but now by trucking wth vs they have thowsandes of our Iron hatchetts such as they be.

Targette they have, though not many, nor

every where, but these they have are made of the Barkes of Trees rownd and thicke ynough to keep out an arrowe.

For their Drums they have a great deepe platter of wood, the mouth whereof Covering w^th a Skyn at each Corner they ty a walnutt, w^ch meeting on the back side neere the bottome, w^th a small Cord they twitch them togither vntill they be so tough and stiffe that they maye beat vpon them as do wee vpon a Drum, and they yeild a reasonable ratling sownde.

Their chief Attempts are by Stratagems, surprizes and trecheries yet the Weroances, women or Children they put not to death but keepe them Captiues, they have a method in warre, and for a pleasure Powhatan would needs have yt shewed once to our people and yt was in this manner ffformed at Mattaponient.

Having painted and disguysed themselves in the fairest manner they could deuise, they devided themselves into two Companies well

neere 100. in a Company the one Company they called Monacans, the other Powhatans, eyther army had muskett shott one from another, ranckinge themselves 15 a breast, and each ranck from other 4 or 5 yardes, not in file, but in the openinge betwixt their files, so as the reare could shoot as conveyently as the front, Having thus pitched the field, from eyther part went a messenger, wth Condicons that whosoever were vanquished, such as escaped upon their submission or comyng in though 2. daies after should live, but their wives and Childrene should be prize for the conquerors, the messengers were no sooner returned, but they approached in their orders, on each flanck a Sergeant, and in the reare an officer for Liuetenant, all duly keepinge their Ranck, yet leapeing and singing after their accustomed tune, wch they use only in warrs: upon the first flight of Arrowes they gave such horrible showte and scritches as so many infernall Helhowndes, when they had spent their Arrowes they ioyned togither prettely charging and retiring, every Ranck seconding other: as they gett advantage, they catched their enemies

by the hair of the head, and downe he came that was taken his enemy w^th a woodden sword seemed to beat out his braines and still they crept to the Reare to mayntayne the skyrmish. The Monacans decreasing the Powhatans chardged them in forme of a halfe moone they unwilling to be inclosed fled all in a Troupe to their Ambuscadoes; on whome they led them very cunningly: the Monacans dispers'd themselves among the fresh men: whereupon the Powhatans retired themselves w^th all speed to their seconde, w^ch the Monacans seeing took that advantage to retire againe to their owne Battaile, and so each returned to their owne quarter, All their Accon voice and gestures both in Chardging and retiring were so strayned to the height of their quality and nature, that the straungnes therof made yt seeme very delightfull.

Concerning a greene wound caused eyther by the Stroake of an Axe or sword, or such sharpe thinge, they have present remedy for, of the Juyce of certayne hearbes, howbeyt a compound wound (as the Surgeons call yt)

where beside the opening & cutting of the flesh any rupture is, or bone broken, such as our small shott make vpon them they knowe not easily how to cure, and therefore languish in the misery of the payne therof. Old vlcers likewise and putrefied hurts are seldome seene cured amongst them, howbeit to scarrefye & swelling or make incision they have a kind of Instrument of some splinted stone.

Every Spring they make themselves sick wth drinckeing the Juyce of a roote wch they call Wighsacan & water, whereof take so great a quantety, that it purgeth them in a very violent manner, so that in 3. or 4. daies after they scarse recover their former health; some tymes they are sorely troubled wth deopsyes, Swellinge Aches, and such like deceases by reason of their vncleanenes and fowle feeding: for cure whereof they buyld a Stone, in the forme of a Douehowse wth matts so close that a few Coales therein, covered wth a pott will make the Patient sweat extreamely.

For swelling also they vse small peece of Touch-wood in the forme of Cloves, wch pricking on the grief they burne close to the flesh, and from thence drawe the Corruption wth their mouthe. They have many Wefsed Phisitians, who wth their Charmes and Rattles, wth an infernall rowt of woods and accons will seeme to suck their inward grief from their Navells or their affected places: but concerning our Chirurgeons they are generally so conceipted of them, that they believe that their Plaisters will heale any hurt.

Caput. 9.

Of their oeconomick or howshold affaires: How they obtayne their wives: the womens workes and wherefore they contend for manie wives.

They expresse their loves to such women as they would make choise to live wth all, by presenting them wth the fruicte of their Labours, as by fowle, fish, or wild beastes, wch by their

Huntinge, their Bowes and arrowes, by weeres or other-
-wise they obteyne; wch they being vnto the young
women, as also of such former fruicte and berries,
wch their travell abroad hath made them knowe
readely where to gather, and those of the best kind
in their season; yf the young mayden become
once to be Sororians virgs, and live vnder
Parents, the Parents must allow of the Suter,
and for their good will the Wer ꝑmiseth that
the daughter shall not want of such ꝓvisions,
nor of deare skynns, fitly drest for to weare,
besides he ꝑmiseth to doe his endeavor to procure
her beades, perle and Copper and for handsell
gives her before them something as a kynd
of Arra Sponsalitia token of betroathing or
Contract of a further Amity and acquaintaunce
to be contynued betweene them, as so after as
the likeking growes, and assoone as he hath
ꝓvided her a house (if he have none before) and
some platters, Morters, and Matts he takes her
home: and the Wroances after this manner
maye have as many as they can obteyne,
howbeyt all the rest, whome they take after
their first choise, are (as yt were) mercynary,

hired but by covenant & condicon for a tyme, but if they keepe them longer then the tyme appointed, they must ever keepe them, how deformed deseased, or vnaccompaniable soever they may prove.

They are people most voluptuous, yet are the women very carefull not to be suspected of dishonesty, w^th^ out the leave of the husbande, but he giving his consent they are like Virgills Scantia, and may embrase the acquaintaunce of any straunger for nothing, and it is accompted no offence, and vncredible yt is, w^th^ what heat both Sexes of them are given over to those Intemperance, and the men to preposterous Venus: for w^ch^ they are full of their Countrye desease (the Pox) very young: for cure of w^ch^ yet, they have both meanes of their owne and sufficyent skill, applying certaine hearbes, and bruised roote w^ch^ do p^rsently ease, and in tyme cure, and w^ch^ kind of Medicines Paracelsus calleth sedativa medicamenta, having besyde the Saxafras one hearb w^ch^ (as it is supposed) in short tyme quencheth and mortificth the malignant poyson of that foule desease.

The women are said to be easily delivered of child, yet doe they love Childrene very dearly: to make the Childrene hardye in the coldest mornings they wash them in the rivers, and by paintinge and oyntemente so tanne their skynns, that after a yeare or twoo, no weather will hurt them; as also to practize their Children, in the use of their Bowes and Arrowes, the mothers do not give them their breakfast in a morning before they have hitt a marke, wch she appointe them to shoot at, and comonly so cunninge they will have them, as throwing vp in the ayre a piece of Mosse or some such light thinge, the boy must wch his arrowe meet yt in the Fall. and hit yt, or ells he shall not haue his breakfast.

Both men women and Childrene have their sendall names at first according to the severall humor of their Parents, and for the men Children, at first when they are young their mothers give them a name, calling them by some affectionate Title, or perhapps observing their growinge Inclynacon give yt accordingly, and so the great King Powhatan, called a young

daughter of his whom he loved well Pochahuntas,
wch may signifie little wanton, howbeyt she was
rightly called Amonute at more ripe yeares, when
they become able to travell in the woode, & to goe
forth a hunting, fowling & fishing wth their
fathers, the father gives him another name as
he findes him apt and of spiritt to prove toward
& valiant, or otherwise chaunging the mothers,
wch yet in the family is not so soone forgotten.
And yf soe be yt be by agility, strength, or
any extraordinary straine of witt he fformes
any remarkeable or valerous exploite in Open
Act of Armes or by Stratagem especially in the
tyme of extremity in the warrs for the publique
and common State upon the enemie, the king
taking notice of the same, doth then not only
in open view, and solemnely reward him wth
some Present of Copper or Chaine of perle and
Beades, but doth then likewise (and wch they
take for the most emynent and supreme favour)
give him a name answearable to the Attempt,
not much differing herein from the auncyent
warlick encouragement and order of the
Romains to a well deserving and gallant young
Spiritt.

The men fish hunt fowle, goe to the warrs, make the weeres, botes, and such like manly exercises and all labourers abroad: the women as the weaker sort be put to the easier workes, to sow their Corne to weed and cleuse the same, of the Orabanke, Dodder and Choak-weed, and such like, w^ch^ ells would wynd about the Corne and hinder the growth of yt, for by reason of the rankenes and lustines of the grownd such weedes spring vp very easely and thick, and if not pluckt awaie, the Corne would prosp^r^ so much the worse, for w^ch^ they keepe the hillock of their Corne, and the passadg betweene (for they sett their wheat, as we doe o^r^ hoppes, an equal distance one hill from another) as neat and cleane as we doe our gardein bedds; likewise the women plant & attend the gardeins, dresse the meat brought home make their broathes and Pockerehicory drinckes, make matts and baskettes, pownd their wheat, make their bread, prepare their vessells, beare all kyndes of burthens, and such like, and to w^ch^ the Children sett their handes, helping their mothers.

There are notes to be taken by wch may be discerned a marryed woman from a Mayd: the Maydes have the forepart of their heads and sides shaven close, the hinder ptc very long, wch they wynd prettely and ymbroyder in playtes, letting yt hang so to the full length, the marryed women weare their haire all of a length shaven, as the Irish by a dish.

The women have a great care to mayntayne and keepe fier light still wthin their howses, and yf at any tyme yt goe out, they take yt for an evill signe, but yf yt be out, they kindle yt againe presently by chauffing a dry pointed stick in a hole of a little square peece of wood, that fiering yt self will so fier Mosse leaves, or any such like thing that is apt quickly to burne.

They make them sometymes Candells of the fattest splinters of the Pine or fiire tree, wch will give a good cleire light, and burne strongly, though the matter will soone consume; for wch they have many slivers ready cut

out a foote long, some shorter to be ready to light a second as soone as the first goes out: and in Shropshier betweene the Lords of Oswestry and Ellesmere the like lightes they vse, at this daie of the fyre tree, of w^ch yt is said there be infinite taken dailie out of the earth in a marish ground, and supposed to have lyen in the moist earth ever since the generall flood, the Chippes whereof they vse in steed of Candells in poore howses, so fatt is the wood, as it the smell also strong and sweet.

Their Corne and (indeed) their Copper, Hatchetts, Howes, beades perle, and most thinge w^th them of value according to their owne estymacon, they hide one from the knowledge of another in the ground w^thin the woodes, and so keepe them all the yeare, or vntill they have fitt vse for them, as the Romains did their monies and treasure in certaine Sellars, called therefore as Plinye remembers Fanissæ: & when they take them forth they scarse make their women privie to the Storehowse.

They are much desirous of o^r Comodities, and therefore when any of o^r boates arrive before their townes, they will come downe vnto vs, or suffer vs to come vp vnto their howses & demaund after Copper, white beades, Howes to pare their Corne fieldes and Hatchetts for w^ch they will give vs of such things as they have in exchaung, as deere skins, furrs of the wild catt, black Fox, Beaver, Otter, Arrachoune, fowle, fish, deare, or Beares flesh tried deares suett made vp handsomly in Cakes, their Country Corne, Peas, beanes, and such like and indeed (to say truth) their victuall is their chief riches.

We have observed how when they would affirme any thing by much earnestnes and truth, they vse to bynd yt by a kynd of oath, either by the life of the great King, or by pointing vp to the Sun & clapping the right hand vpon the hart, and sometimes they have been vnderstood to sweare by the Manes of their dead father.

If they will expresse that we and they

wilbe or are all one Freindes or brothers, as their word is, they will ioyne the Indices or Twoo forefingers togither of either hand, as the Indians of Nova Francia, or ells clasping their fingers w^th^ in ours they will saie so and so close ioyned and neere we are vnto their loves.

The reason whie each Chief Patron of a Famelie especially Weroances, are desirous & indeed strive for manie wives is because they would have manie children, who maie if chaunce be fight for them, when they are old, as also thew feed & mayntayn them, yet sure for the nomber of people inhabiting these partes, this Country hath not appeared so populous here to vs as ellswhere in the West Indies and phappes their ignoraunce in not fynding out yet the vse of many things necessarie and beneficiall to nature, w^ch^ their Country yet plentifully & naturally affordes, their often wawrs for women (in w^ch^ manie hundreds perish) and their ymoderate vse and multeplicity of women (and those often full of fowle diseases) leave this Country not so well

stocked, as other partes of the Maine, and as the Islands have beene found to be by the Spaniards: besides (vnder Correction) and yt maie be a Probleme in Philosophy whether variety of women be a furtherance or hinderer of manie births: yt being cleere in these Countries where (as I said) so manie penuries for want of knowledge yet be amongst the people, that the tired body cannot have those sensuall helpes (as the Turkes) to hold vp the ymoderate desires, manie women deviding the body and the strength thereof, make yt generally vnfitt to the office of Increase, rather then otherwise: And so maie the Comon people especially for the most part, for this reason likewise be not so long lived here as ellswhere, even amongest Salvages where greater moderacon is vsed, and where they keepe a stricter Ceremonie in their kind of Marriages and have not as manie women as they can buy or wyn by force and violence from the Enemyes.

Caput. 10.

Of the Comodities of the Country, Frwicte, Trees, Beaste Fowle, Fish, Perle, Copper & Mines.

That yt may yet further appeare, how this Country is not so naked of Comodities nor wretched of provision fitt for the susteynance of mankind; as some ignorantly ymagine, and others have falcely reported, I will in this Chapter propose for the testimonie of the truith thereof I may appeale to many hundredz w^ch may convince the relation of a discourse only for forme and ostentacon delivered, nor letteany man suppose that materialls of so goodly a Navie as maie be there framed for Planckes, Masts Pitch and Tarre, Soapeashes, Turpentine Seon, Cordage, Mulberry trees for silke and another kind of silke of the grasse, Saxafras and other aromaticall druggs Gums, Oyle, and Dyes, are of noe value or not worthy the exposure of a Colonie for secondary and politique endes to be established there since Muscovia and

Polonia doe yearely receave manie thowsandes, for Pitch, Tarre Soapeashes, Rosin, Flax, Cordage, Maste, Yardes, Waynscot Firrs, Glasse and such like, also Swethland receaves much from vs for Iron and Copper, France in like manner for Wyne Canvase, and salt: Sprayne as much for Iron, Steele, Figgs Raysons and Sacke. Italy for Silkes and Velvetts consumes or chief Comodities: Holland maynteynes yitself by fishing and trading at or owne doores, All these Temporize wth others for necessity, but all as uncertaine as peace and warre; besides the Charge travell and daunger in transporting them by Seas Landes Stormes and Pyratts, then how much may Virginia have the prerogative for the benefitt of or Land, whereas wth in 100. miles all these are to be had either readie provided by nature, or ells to be prepared were there but industrious men to labour; so as then here is a place, a nurse for Soldiers, a practize for Marriners, a Trade for Marchants, a reward for the good, and that wch is most of all a busines most acceptable to god to bring poor Infidells to his knowledge, and albeit or shipps some will obiect now

returning from thence yearely come freighted home
only, yet wth certaine pretious woode, yt is to
be remembred how that from Hispaniola, Cuba,
and Portrico the Spaniards in their yearely daies
of possessing ye Indies made returnes a long
tyme of the like, as of Cassia fistola, Ebony Guacum,
Lignū vitæ &c vntill they found out the Mynes,
as may wee, we doubt nothing in the heart
and bosume of ours, when we shalbe enabled
truly to dissect yt, fynding such appearances
now in the Suburbs of yt, as yt were, the wch to
tyme the true Revealer of great thinges, I
submitt or rather to him from whome, if or
vnthankfulnes deprive vs not of the blessing
we may expect a prosperous and assured
Compensacon & satisfaccon to wipe of all shores
et in ipsem satisfacere, all the Chardges and
disbursementz wch have hitherto gone out for yt,
albeit such is the busines, as yt should
awake all Charitable Christians to follow yt
according to the goodnes of the Cause, & nott
according to the greatnes of profitt & Comoditie,
Lett Mammon pish wch his gold, that hath
no other Stubble to inkendle the flame of his

zeale vnto so holie a worke.

The Natiues have here a kinde of Wheat, w^ch they call Poketawes, as the West Indians call the same Maiz. The forme of yt is of a mans Tooth, somwhat thicker; for the preparing of the ground for w^ch they vse this manner: they bruise the Barke of those Trees w^ch they will take away neere the Roote, then do they scorch the rootes w^th fier, that they growe no more; the next yeare w^th a crooked piece of wood, they beat vp those Trees by the rootes, and in their Mouldes they plant their Corne, the manner is thus, they make a hole in the earth w^th a Stick, and into yt they put 3. or 5. graines of wheat and one or 3. of beanes: these holes they make 4. or 5. foot one from another, for the Corne being set close togither, one Stalke would choak ells the growth of another, and so render both vnprofitable, their women & children do contynually keepe the ground w^th weeding, and when the Corne is growne middle high, they hill yt about like a Hoppeyard, and the stalke will growe a mans hight or rather more

from the ground, and ev̄y stalke comonly beareth two eares some 3. manie but one, and some none, every eare ordinarily hath betwixt 300. & 600. graynes, and the eare groweth w^th a great hose or pill about yt & above yt, the stalke being greene hath a sweet Juyce in yt, somewhat like a Sugar cane, w^ch is the Cause that when they gather the Corne greene, they suck the stalkes, for as we gather greene peas so do they their Corne being greene, w^ch excelleth their old.

Peas they have w^ch the Natives call Apsentemmons and are the same w^ch in Italy they call Fagioli.

Their beanes are little like a French beane, and are the same w^ch the Turkes call Garnances, and these kind of pulse they much esteeme for dayntie.

By their dwellinge are some great Mulberrye Trees and these in some pte of the Countrey are found growing naturally in pretty groves, there was an assay made to make silke,

and surely the wormes prospered excellently well, vntill the Mr. Workeman fell sick, during wch tyme they were eaten wth Ratte, and this wilbe a Comodite not meanely profitable, now yt is seriously considered off, and order taken that yt shall be duly followed.

In some places we fynd Chesnuttz whose wild fruict I maie well saie equallize the best in Fraunce, Spaine, Germany, Italy, or those so comended in the black sea by Constantinople of all wch I have eaten.

They have a small fruict growing in little trees husked like a Chesnut, but the fruict most like a very small acron, this they call Chesnigquamins, and these wth Chesnuttz they boile 4. or 5. howres, of wch they make both broth and bread, for their Chief men or at their greatest feastz.

They have Cherries much like a Damozin, but for their tast and Cullour, we called them Cherries, and a plomb there is

somwhat fairer then a Cherrie of the same relish, then wch are seldome a better eaten.

They have a Berry much like o[r] Goose-berries in greatnes, Cullour and tast, these they call Rawcomens, and they doe eate them rawe or boyled.

In the watry Valleis groweth a berry wch they call Ocoughtanamins very much like vnto Capers these they gather and dry in the heat of the Sonn, and when they will eate them they boyle them nere half a daie, for otherwise they differ not much from poison.

Mallowme groweth as o[r] Bents doe in Meadowes the seed is not much vnlike to Rie though much smaller these they vse for a deyntie bread buttred wth dearer Suett.

They have a Plomb wch they call Pessem-mins like to a Medler in England, but of a deepe tawnie Cullour, they grow on a most high tree, when they are not fully ripe, they

are harsh and choakie, and furre a mans mouth like Allam, howbeit being taken fully ripe, yt is a reasonable pleasant fruict, somwhat lushious, I have seene sᵈ people put them into their baked & sodden puddinge, there be whose tast allowes them to be as pretious as the English Apricock, I confesse yt is a good kind of horse plomb.

Here is a Cherry redd fruict both wᵗʰin & wᵗʰout (as I have seene the like in the Bermudas) wᶜʰ we call the prickle peare, in the Indias they are well knowne to every comon Marryner, they beare a broad thick spungeous leafe, full of kernells, they be like vnto the Pomegranet, the last of this peare is verye pleasant, and the Juyce cold and fresh like the water in the West Indian nut called Cocus, the Juyce is sharpe and penetrable like deale wyne prescribed against the stone.

Here is a fruict by the Naturalls called a Maracock this groweth generally low and creepeth in a manner amongst the Corne (albeit I have seene yt planted in a

gardein wch in our Fort, at James Towne, to spred and ripe as high as the pale) yt is of the bignes of a Queene apple, and hath manie azurine or blew kernells, like as a Pomegranet, and yt bloometh a most sweet and delicate flowre, and yt is a good sommer cooling fruict, and in every feild where the Indians plant their Corne be Cart loades of them.

The Macokos is of the forme of a Pumpeons, I must confesse nothing so good, tis of a more waterish tast, the Inhabitants seeth a kind of Mellion wch they put into their walnut milke, and so make a kind of Toothsome meat.

In Aprill Maie and June are great store of Strawberries, Raspices, Hurts &c and many hearbs in the Spring-time are comonly dis-persed throughout the woodes good for broathes and Sallets, as Violetts, Purslin, Sorrell and Roses in their season & besides many we vsed whose names we knowe not.

It would easelie raise a well stayed Judgement into wonder as Sr Thomas Dale hath writt sometimes vnto his Matie Counsell here for Virginia to behold the goodly vines burthening every neighbour bush, and clymbing the toppes of highest trees, and those full of Clusters of grapes in their kind, however dressed and shadowed soever from the Sun, and though never pruned or manured; I dare saie yt, that we have eaten there, as full and lushious a grape as in the villages betweene Paris and Amiens, and I have drunck often of the nathe wine, wch Doctor Bohune and other of or people have made full as good, as yor French brittish wyne, 20. gallons at a tyme have bene sometymes made wthout any other helpe, then by crushing the grape wth the hand, wch letting to settle 5. or 6. daies hath in the drawing forth proved strong and headdy, vnto what affection might not these be brought by the art and industry of manie skilfull Vineroones being thus naturally good! and how materiall and principall a Comoditie this maie prove, either for the benefitt of such as shall inhabit there, or to be returned over

hith^e (especially where we maie have pipe-Staves to make a Castle of so cheape, and at hand, I referre yt to indifferent Judgements.

Many Rootes the Indians have here likewise for food the Chief they call Sockawough, and yt groweth like a flag in low muddy Freshes; in one day a Saluadge will gather sufficient for a wecke, these Rootes are much of the greatnes and tast of Potatoes, they vse to rake vp a great nomber of them in old leaves and ferne, and then cover all w^th earth or sand, in the manner of a Colepit, on each side they contynue a great fier, a daie and a night before they dare eate yt: rawe yt is no better than poison, and being roasted (except yt be tender and the heat abated, or sliced and dryed in the Sun mixed w^th sorrell and meale or such like) it will prickle and torment the throat extreamely, and yet in Sommer they vse this ordinarily for bread.

They have another Root w^ch they call Wighsacan, as the other feedeth the bodye, so this cureth their hurts and diseases, yt is a smale

roote, wch they bruise and applie to the wound.

Pocones is a small roote that groweth in the Mountaines, wch being dried and beate into powder, tourneth red, and this they use for swellinge, aches, anoynting their ioynts, paynting their heades and garmente wth yt, for wch they accompt yt very pretious and of much worth.

Musquaspenne is a root of the bignes of a finger and as red as blood, in dying yt will wither almost to nothing wth this they use to paynt their Matte, targette & such like.

There is here great store of Tobacco, wch the Salvages call Apooke, howbeit yt is not of the best kynd yt is but poore and weake, and of a byting tast, yt growes not fully a yard above ground, bearing a little yellowe flower, like to Henne-bane, the leaves are short and thick, somwhat rownd at the upper end, whereas the best Tobacco of Trynidado and the Oronoque is large sharpe and growing 2. or 3. yardes from the ground, bearing a flower of the bredth

of o^r Bell Flowers in England, the Salvages here dry the leaves of this Sprooke over the fier and sometymes in the Sun, and crumble yt into poulder, stalk, leaves and all, taking the same in pipes of earth, w^ch very ingeniously they can make, we observe that those Indians w^ch haue one twoo or more women take much, but such as yet haue no appropriate woman take little or none at all.

Here is also Pellitory of Spaine, and divers other symples w^ch our Approthecaries haue geathered and found to be good and medecinable.

In the low marishes grow plotts of onions conteyning an Acre of ground or more in manie places, but they are small like Chiballs or Schallions, not past the bignes of the toppe of ones thomb, they eate well sod or otherwise in sallett or in bak't meate, or people fynd good and wholsome relish in them, howbeit the Inhabitants cannot abyde to eate of them, and these onions they doe for the most part appeare in the last season of the yeare, for yt is to be vnderstood, how the Indians deuide the yeare into

5. seasons, the Winter w^ch they call Popanow, the Spring Cattapeuk: the Sommer Cohattayough, the Caring of their Corne Nepenough, the harvest and fall of the leafe Taquitock.

They haue divers beasts fitt for provision, the chief are Deare, both redd and fallow, great store in the Country towardes the heads of the Rivers, though not so many amongst the Rivers, In o^r Island about James Towne are some few nothing differing from o^rs in England but that of some of them the Antelette of their hornes are not so manie, our people haue seene 200. 100. & 50 in a head.

There is a beast they call Aracoune much like a Badger tayled like a Fox, and of a mingle, black and grayish Cullour, and w^ch useth to live on trees as Squirrels doe, excellent meat, we kill often of them, the greatest nomber yet we obteyne by trade.

Squirrels they have and those in great plentie, are very good meat, some are neere as great, as our smallest sort of wild Rabbitts

some blackish or black and white, like those wch here are called Silver hayred, but the most are grey.

A small beast they have wch the Indians call Assapannick not passing so big as a Ratt, but we call them Flying Squirrells, because spreading their leggs from whence to either shoulder runs a flappe or Fynne much like a Batts wing, and so stretching the largenes of their Skynns they have bene seene to make a pretty flight from one tree to another, sometymes 30. or 40. yardes.

An Opassum is a beast as big as a pretty Beagle, of grey Cullour, yt hath a head like a Swyne, eares, feet and tayle like a Ratt, she carries her young ones under her belly in a piece of her owne Skyn, like as in a bagg, wch she can open and shutt, to lett them out or take them in as she pleaseth, and doth therein lodge carry and suckle her young and eates in tast like a pig.

Muscascus is a beast black in Cullour,

proportioned like a water-Ratt, he hath a Cod w^th^in him, w^ch^ yeildeth a strong sent like vnto Musk, yt is good meat, if the Cod be taken out, otherwise the flesh will tast most strong and ranck of the musk, so will the broth wherein yt is sod.

Hares they have some few about James-Towne but both in the Islands and Mayne, vp at the Falls & below about Fort Henry and Charles Fort great store howbeit they are no bigger than our Conies.

Beares there be manie about the Sea-coast w^ch^ the Indians hunt most greedily, for indeed they love them above all other their flesh and therefore hardly sell any of them vnto vs, vnles vpon large proffers of Copper, beads and Hatchettes, we haue eaten of them and they are very toothsome sweet venison, as good to be eaten as the flesh of a calf of 2. yeares old, howbeit they are very little in comparison of those of Muscovia and Tartaria.

The Beaver there is as big as an ordinary

water-dogg, but his leggs exceeding short, his fore feet like a doggs, his hinder like a Swannes, his tayle somwhat like the forme of a Rackett, bare wthout haire, wch to eate the Salvages esteeme a great delicate.

Otters there be manie, wch as the Beevers the Indians take wth Gynns and Snares, and esteeme the skynns great Ornamentes, and of all these beasts they use to feed when they catch them.

Lyons I will not posetively affirme that the Country hath, since our people never yet saw any, howbeit in their discoveryes to the Mangogues they did light once upon two skynns, wch all the Judgementes in the Fort were supposed to be Lyons skinnes, And this last yeare myself being at the Falls wch Sr Thomas Dale, I found in an Indian howse certaine Clawes tyed up in a String wch I brought awaie and into England, and they are assured vnto me to be Lyons-Clawes.

There is alsso a beast wch the Indians call Nitchumgwoyes in the forme of a wildcatt.

Their Foxes are like our Silver hayred Conies of a small proporcon, and not smelling so ranck as those in England.

The dogge of the Country are like their Woulues and cannot barke but howle, and are not unlike those auncyent dogge called Cracutæ, wch were said to be engendred of a Wulfe and a Bitch and are like the Turkish Jackalls keeping about the graues of the dead in the Comon Poliandrin or place of Sepulture.

Their Woulues are not much bigger then or English Foxes.

Martins, Polcatts, Wesells, Monkeys we knowe they have, because we haue seene many of their Skynns, though very seldome any of them alive, but one thing is worth the obserning, we could never perceave that their Flies, Serpents or other Vermyn were any way noxious when

in the south ptes of America they are alwaies dangerous and often deadly.

Likewise as they have fruicte and beaste so have they fowle and that great store, of birdes the Eagle is the greatest devourer and many of them there: there be divers sortes of haukes Sparhaukes, Dancrette, Goshaukes, Falcons, and Ospreys, I brought home from thence this yeare myself a Falcon and a Tassell, the one sent by Sr Thomas Dale to his Highnes the Prince and the other was presented to the Earle of Salsburye, faire ones what the proof of them maie be, I have not learned, they prey most upon fish.

Turkeys there be great store, wild in the woode like Phesantes in England 40. in a Company, as big as ore tame here, and yt is an excellent fowle, and so passing good meat, as I maie well saie, yt is the best of any kind of flesh wch I have ever yet eaten there.

Partridges there are little bigger then our Quailes, I have knowne of ore men to have

killed wth their small shott, sometime from off a tree 5. or 6. at a shoot.

Cranes white and grey, Herons both gray and white, woosells or black byrds wth redd showlders. Thrushes and divers sorts of small byrdes some Carnation, some blew and some other straunge kyndes to vs unknowne by name

In winter there are great store of Swannes, Geese, Brants, Duck, Widgeon, Dottrell, Oxeyes, Mallard, Teale, Sheldrakes, and divers diving fowles, and of all these sorts that aboundaunce, as I dare avowe yt no Country in the world may have more,

Parakitoes I have seene manie in the winter and knowne divers killed, yet be they a fowle most swift of wing, their winges and breasts are of a greenish Cullour, wth forked tayles, their heades some crymson, some yellow, some orange-tawny very beautifull. Some of or Colonie who have seene of the East Indian parrattes affirme how they are like to that kynd, wch

hath given vs somewhat the more hope of the
verenes of the South-sea, these parratte by all
probabilitie like enough to come from some of
the Countryes vpon that Sea

A kind of wood-pidgion we see in the
wintertime and of them such nombers, as I
should drawe (from our Homelinge here, such who
have seene paventure scarse one more then in
the markett) the Credit of my relation con-
-cerning all the other in question, yf I should
expresse what extended flocke and how manie
Thowsandes in one flock I have seene in one daie,
wondring (I must confesse) at their flight when
like so manie thickned Clowdes, they (having
fed to the Norward in the daye tyme) returne
againe more So-wardly towarde night to their
Roust, but there be manie hundred witnesses,
who maie convince this my report yf therein
yt testefieth an vntruth.

To the naturall Comodities w^ch the Countrye
hath of fruicte, Beaste and fowle, we maie
also adde the no meane Comodite of fish, of w^ch

in March and Aprill are great Shoells of Herring

Sturgeon great store comonly in Maie if the yeare be forward, I have bene at the taking of some before Algernoone Fort, and in Southampton River in middst of March and they remayne w^th vs June, July and August, and in that plenty as before expressed in the Chapter.

Shaddes great store of a yard long, and for sweetnes and fatnes a reasonable good fish, he is only full of small bones like our Barbells in England.

Geamyns, Porpois, Seales, Sturgraies, Brette Mullette White Salmons, Troute, Soles, Playse Cornfish, Rockfish, Eeles, Lampreys, Cat-fish Perch of 3. sorte, Shrimpes, Crefishes, Cockles, Muskells, & more such like like needles to name, all good fish.

There is the Garfish some of w^ch are a yard long small and rownd like an Eele, and as

big as a mans legg, having a long Snowt full of sharp Teeth.

Oysters there be in whole banck, and bedds and those of the best, I have seene some 13. Inches long, the Salvages use to boyle Oysters and Mussells togither, and w^th the broath they make a good spoone meat, thickned w^th the flower of their wheat, and yt is a great thrift and husbandry w^th them to hang the Oysters vpon strings (being shoaled and dried) in the smoake thereby to preserve them all the yeare.

There be twoo sorts of Sea Crabbs, and the one our people call a Ring Crabb, and they are taken in shoall waters from off the shoare a dozen at a tyme, hanging one vpon anothers taile, they are of a foot in length and half a foote in bredth having manie leggs and a long tayle, the Indians seldome eate of this kind.

There is a kind of Shelfish of the proporcon of a Cockle, but far greater, yt hath a smooth shell, not ragged as o^r Cockles, tis good meat

though somewhat tough.

Tortoyses here (such as in the Bermudas) I haue seene about the entraunce of o^r^ Bay, but we haue not taken of them, but of the Land Tortoyses we take and eate dailie, the difference betweene w^ch^ is nothing in shape, but in Cullour and bignes, those of the Land are gray w^th^ a long tayle, those of the Sea haue black shells, speckled w^th^ yellow, the bodyes great in Compasse like a Targett.

But the most straung fish is a small one so like the picture of St Georges Dragon as possibly can be except the legge and winges, And the Toad fish w^ch^ will swell till yt be like to burst, when yt cometh into the ayre.

Thus it appeareth that this Country affordeth many excellent Vegitables and living creatures, yet I must saie true of grasse, for the present there is little or none, but what groweth in Low Marisches for all the Country is over-shadowed w^th^ trees, whose droppinge continually

turneth grasse to weedes by reason of the ranckines of the ground, wch would soone be amended by good husbandry.

Howbeit woodes it hath great, beautifull, fruictfull, pleasant and profitable, the grounde cleane under them at least passeable, both for horse and foote. The oake here for stature and tymber may compare wth any being so tall and streight, that they will beare, square of good tymber for 20. yardes long: of this wood there is 2. or 3. severall kyndes, the acrons of one kind whose Barke is more white then the other, is somwhat sweetish, wch being boyled half a daie in severall waters, at last affordes a sweet oyle wch they call Macokominy, they keep yt in gourdes to annoint their heades and joynts, the fruict they eate made in bread or otherwise.

There is also Elme and Ash, of wch are made Speashes, yf the Trees be very great, the Ashes will be verry good and melt to hard Lumps being carefully burned, but if they be small, and suffred to ptake too much of the

smoak they wilbe but powder nothing so good as the other, besyde they will be very fowle and black.

Of walnutte there be three kindes, the black walnutt w^ch is returned home yearely by all shipping from thence, and yeilde good proffitt, for yt is well bought vp to make waynscott tables, Cubbardes, chaires & stooles of a delicate grayne and Cullour like Ebonie, and not subiect to the worme, the fruict of this is little, yt is thinne shelled, and the karnell bitter, annother kynd there is, w^ch beares a great fruict w^th a hard shell, and the meat very sweet, and of these the Indians make oyle to droppe their ioynte and Smeere their bodies w^th w^ch doe make them supple & nymble, the third sort is as this last exceeding hard shelled, and hath a passing sweet karnell, this last kind the Indians beat into pieces w^th stones, and putting them shells and all into Morters, mingling water w^th them w^th long woodden pestells, pound them so long togither vntill they make a kynd of mylke, or oylie liquor w^ch

they call Powcohicora.

There is a kynd of wood wch we call Cypres, because both the wood the fruict and leafe, did most resemble yt, and of these trees there are some neere 3. fathome about at the root very streight and 50. 60. or 80. foote wthout a braunch.

The Cedars for savour and Cullor maie compare wth those of Lybanon, the Clymate of the one and the othr differing little.

Of Saxafras there is plenty enough, the rootes whereof not manie yeares since were sold for 20s a t and better, and if order maie yet be taken that overmuch be not returned, and that wch shall be brought be kept in one hand, all Europe maie be served thereof at good rates, the Cedars and Saxafras yeild a kynd of gowme in a small proporcon of themselves, there haue bene Conclusions tryed to extract yt out of the wood but nature affowrded greater quantety that art could p̄duce.

There are pines infinite especially by the Sea-coast and manie other sortes, the use of wch are comodious for shipping Pipe staues, Clapboard, Yardes and Maste for shipping, and those here are so faire and large, as a Shipp of 300. tonne burthen called the Starre sent thither the last yeare vpon purpose fitted and prepared wth scupper holes to take in Masles was not able to take in 40. of fowerscore, vnles they should have cut them shorter, wch is a Comoditie rightly vnderstood of such moment for this Kingdome (all the easterly Countryes from whence we have hitherto had them so ympo-verished and wasted as they are not able to furnish his Matie navie. Witnes how hardly were obteyned those wch we had last from thence, and those vpon his Maties private and pticuler letter to the King of Denmark, as were ynough (yt may be boldly sayd) to make good the whole charge of or plantation.

By the dwellinge of the Salvages are Bay-trees, wild Roses, and a kynd of Sow-thee, wch beares a Cod like to the peas, but nothing

so big, wee take yt to be Locust.

Crabb trees there be, but the fruict small and bitter, howbeit being graffed vpon, soone might we have of our owne Apples of any kind, peares, and what ells.

Besides these fruict trees, there is a white Poplar and another like vnto yt, that yeildeth a verye cleere and odoriferous gumme like Turpentine, w^ch^ I have heard Doctor Bohune and some of o^r^ Surgeons there saie may well be reckoned a kynd of Balsome, and will heal any greene wound.

There groweth in the Island of James Towne a small Tree of leaves armes and fruict, like the Mirtle tree, the fruict thereof hath a tast w^ch^ the Mirtle, but much more bynding, these trees growe in great plentie, round about a standing pond of fresh water in the middle of the Island, the Pill or rynd whereof is of great force against inveterate dissenterical fluxes, of w^ch^ Doctor Bohune made open

experiment in manie of ꝺ^r men labouring) w^ch such diseases: and therefore wisheth all such Phisitians as shall goe thither to make use thereof.

For Mineralls we will promise nothing, but the hope of w^ch seeing the low-ground yeilds manie faire shewes, the Mountaines cannot be doubted, but that in them manie sortes wilbe found: and ꝺ^r people in their first discovery into the Monocan Country discovered two Mynes, the one w^ch in 6. miles of the head of the Falls, w^ch takes the name of Namantack the fynder of yt; w^ch is conceaved wilbe worth the exploring, and w^ch little charge, the other lyes in the myd-waie betweene Twoo Townes of Monacan, the neerest called Mowhemmche, the furthest Massinacack distant one from another 14. miles, of whose goodnes there is no doubt, since the Sparre only taken no further then 2. or 3. foote into the earth, affourdes Mettall worth the labour: And concerning a silver-Myne not far from the same place, an Helvetian one William Henrick Faldoe assured ꝺ^r Lord Generall, and therefore made his provision

for the search thereof, and having bene in England made earnest suit vnto o^r Threasourer and his Ma^tie Counsaile here resident for Virginia, w^th whome he contracted, and enlaced into condicons for one yeare and a half for the full p^fourmance of this worke, but his L^p being not at that tyme enabled w^th sufficient Companie to make good that search by raising Forte and planting so far into the Country, (w^ch only must have secured the workemen) it hath pleased god that since that tyme the said Helueticus hath dieed of a burning fever & w^th him the knowledge of that Myne, w^ch in his life time he would not be draume to reveyle vnto any one alls of the Colonie: and there is extant an old plott, w^ch his L^p hath shewed me, wherein by a Portugall o^r seat is layd out & in the same 2. silver Mynes pricked downe, and at the head of the said Falls, the Indians there inhabiting tip their arrowes w^th Cristalls, and we find manie piece scattered in the gritt and sand of the same, where likewise on Pembrook side Sr Thomas Dale hath mentioned to the L^ds of the Counsaile, of a goodlie Iron-myne: and Capt. Newport hath brought home of that

Mettall so sufficient a Triall, as there hath bene made 16. or 17. tonne of Iron so good, as the East Indian Marchants bought yt of the Virginian Companie, pferring yt before any other Iron of what Country soever: and for Copper the hills to the Norwest have that store as the people themselves remembred in the first Chapter, called the Bocootaowanaukes are said to part the mettall from the stone wthout fire, bellowes, or additam.t and beat yt into plates, the like whereof is hardly found in any other pte of the world: Likewise Capt. Argoll (as his Lr beares Record in his printed Narration) in the River Potawomeck found a Myne of Antimony wch (as aforesaid) never dwells single, but holds assured leigue wth Quicksilver, as likewise a Myne of Lead, and we heare the Indians make manie pticuler discriptions of Allam-Mynes to the Southward.

Lastly that the Lakes have perles yt cannot be doubted, for we our selues haue seene manie Chaynes and bracelett worne by the people, and we haue found plentie of

them in the Sepulchers of their liuyes though discolowred by burning the Oysters in the fier, and deformed by the grosse boring: And thus (to conclude) we maie well saie how these poore people haue manie Morrall goodes, such as are p accidens plentifull ynough amongst them and as much (poore Soules) as they come short of those bona moralia, w^ch are p se, for the Countrie (who sees not by what hath bene sayd!) is not so barren, ill destyned and wretched vnder an vnhappie Constellation, but that yt hath (even beside necessarie helpes and Comodities for life) apparant proufes of manie naturall riches, and w^ch are all Bona Fortunæ: againe they are healthie ynough w^ch is Bonum Corporis, nor is Nature a Stepdame vnto them concerninge their aptas membrorū Compositiones: only (god wot) I must graunt, that Bonum morale as aforesaid w^ch is p se, they haue not in medio, w^ch is in Virtute, and then how can they ever obteyne yt in Vltimo w^ch is in Fælicitate, to teach them both w^ch is the end of o^r planting amongst them, to bett-

them knowe what Vertue and Goodnes is, and the Reward of both to teach them Religion and the Crowne of the Righteous: to acquaint them wth Grace, that they maie ꝑticipate wth Glorie, wch god graunt in mercye vnto them.

Finis Lib: 1. Decad. Primi.

The Second Book

of the first decade of the historie of Travaile into Virginia Britannia entreating of the first Discoverers of the Country, and of the first Colonie transported by Sr. Richard Greenuile knight vpon the Island of Roanoak at the expence and Charge of Sr. Walt: Ralegh Knight.

As also of the northern Colonie seated vpon the River of Sachadehoc transported An°. 1605. at the Charge of Sr. John Popham knight, late Lord chiefe Justice of England. gathered by William Strachey Gent:

Psal. 102. ver: 18.

This shalbe written for the Generation to come: and the People which shalbe create shall praise the Lord.

[illegible]

Caput 1.

Of the first Discoverie in generall of America being certain Islands belonging to the Mayne by Columbus Anº: 1492: Of the Discoverie of the Mayne or Continent to the So-ward by Vespucius Americus Aº 1497. who gaue yt to name America: Of Cabot his Discoverie from Florida Norward for the behoof of K. Hen: 7. Aº 1495.

Whether that ever famous Genoese Christopher Columbus were sufficyently learned that by reading of divine Allegories named Timæus of Plato whose subiect is of the mundall nature and frame of the whole world, vnder the person of a subtile and misterious Priest old Tricia of Egipt discoursing to Solon an auncyent and supanimat history of an Island in tyme of great Antiquity called Athlantides lying to the west by wch Columbus might instruct his laboring vnderstanding wth a greater cliernes, that more then probable yt was the Sun and Moone and all ye faier eyes of heaven did not looke downe from aboue,

nor shedd their Influence vppon the things put
vnder the beames of ỹ wandring and lowest
plannett confyned only to Europe Asia, and
Africa, running therby half their Courses
wch̄out ẏffitt & in vaine, shyning vpon̄ the
solitary waters and desolate places empty and
destitute of man̄ and other living Creatures, or
whether Columbers being a great Cosmogra=
=pher did well observe, that Asia, Europe, and
Africk concerning the longitude of the world,
did conteyne in them but 180. visible degrees,
and therefore did Conceave yt to be most likely,
that in the other 180. (wch̄ filleth vp the whole
Course of the Sun̄ to the nomber of 360 degrees,
as well observe our moderne writers intreating
de America sive orbe novo) god would not
suffer the waters only to posseese all but would
leave a place for the habitation of men, beasts,
flying and creeping Creatures, or whether Colum=
=bus by his entertaynment of a Biscan Pilot
(as the Spanyards ambitious of their Countryes
fame will have yt) arrising (after manye
stowers, and stormes in an old Carravell
bruised & wheather beaten) in the Island of
Madera

whose name was not left to posterity, to the end so great a worck, & of such impor=taunce should not be attributed to any other Author then to God. Acosta Lib. 1. cap. 19 of his naturall & morall Historier.

Madera for his hospitallity and freindly Curtesyes had bequeathed vnto him by that dying Pilott" all his Cardes and Sea Instruments by wch he was therby first moved to seeke the Landes of Antipodes and the rich Island of Cipango (whereof Marcus Paulus writeth & Peter Martir before his decades of the Ocean remem=breth the same, or whether yt now pleased the eternall wisdome in his due and appointed tyme that those misteries & Secretes of his goodly workmanship of his should to his vtmost bounds be extended, reveyled & laied open, and those goodly Nations & ample Regions discovered, wch he had seated even beneath the Pole Starre and vnder the equinoctiall lyne (wch left ye Philosophers and Poetts noe belief, that they might possibly be habitable) or whether all these ioyntly Con==curring (for wch how much are we bound to that mighty and mercyfull providence, who in our tymes would vouchsafe to let vs see these so many riches wonders and salvation of Nations, the Testimony of his great love vnto vs, wch he had wth strong barrs as yt were, shutt vp from ye forefathers) to make good the Prophesy of

"as left for payment of his Lodging; so saith Acos=ta. lib. 1. cap. 19.

reverend Seneca.

Venient annis
Secula seris, Quibus Oceanus
Vincula rerũ, laxet, et ingens
Pateat Tellus, Typhisq; nouos
detegat orbes
Nec sit terris, vltima Thyle.

Thus in Englishe

That age shall come albeit in latter tymes
When as the Sea shall ope her lockt vp Bownds
And mighty landes appeare: new heauens new Clymes
Shall Typhis bring to knowledg, and new grounds
New worldes display: then shall not Thule be
The farthest Nor-West Isle our eyes shall see.

Whether of these, or whither all these I saye have brought these discoveries to paße w^ch have found out this straung & new half world, true yt is we find that Columbus w^th 3 shippes and 220 Spaniards in the yeare of Christ sett forward on his voyage about the kalendes of September from the Islandes of Gadez

vppon the mouth of Gibralter, and after sondry Casualties and the Chaunces of Sea, at length fell vpon the Islandz Dominica Cuba &c, wch since have bene called by the names of the West Indye Islands.

And 5 yeares after him was Vesputius Americus set out by the same King of Castile to discover the Continent, who like wise as Columbus happely ffourming the same, gave vnto that his owne name, wch it ev̄ since hath retayned namely America.

The Consideration of both these voyages so famous and notorious in those dayes, moved the royall heart of King Henry 7.th (after yt had much repented him for reiecting the first offer of Columbus, who would haue made him Lord and King of those golden Islandz and for wch no prince was better fitted, having at that tyme the goodliest Navye of any Kinge in Christendome) who therfore furnished forth a skilfull and expert Nauigator one John Cabot a Venetian, howbeit endenized an English

subiect and at that tyme Governour of the Companye of the Marchantes of Cathay in the Citty of London, to make discovery of what was left vntouche at, or vnsurveyed by Columbus and Americus vpon those newe & vnknown Landes for his behoofe in Anº 1495. sett forth, fell to the So-ward of America (to that pte afterwardes called Florida by Johannes Ponticus of Leon, because by him on Palme Sonday discovered 1512 wch the Spaniards call Pasca Florida, and from thence layde open and annexed to the Crowne of England all the Coast of Mleta Incognita, so as true yt is that this portion of America, wch we Call ours, and wher vnto both Ie W. R. 20 yeares since & vpward, and we haue nowe for these 6 yeares addressed our divers forces and severall Colonyes for planta-tion by a princely Godmother her renowmed late Matie of famous memory in witnes of her owne well chosen vertues baptized by the name of Virginia concludinge (indeed) vnder that denomination (as the auncyent Poetts did all Italy by the name of Latium) all the bowndes and Regions both to the south and Nor-ward

from 30 to 44 degrees togithere w^th^ the manie Islandz adiacent thervnto is no other then the same first Continent and Tract of Land w^ch^ the said Venetian old John Cabot the father, discovered, from whome only indeed we laye o^r^ earliest Clayme and Interest (as we maye right well) to this Country.

And sure albeit from the tyme, after that first discovery (during some yll destined few yeares, wherin our home occasions importuned the residence w^th^in our owne Portz both of o^r^ men and shipps) our voyage thither for a while might seeme to lye slombering yet our Tytle could not therby out sleepe yt self nor were our English spiritts so sunck w^th^ the tyme, and many shippes w^ch^ tempt the wide Seas in the like new searches, as that we abandoned o^r^ hopes and fortunes thither.

We shall find howeuer the far famous King Henr: 8.^th^ (full of many impatient and psonall aswell domestick troubles as warrs abroad) could not attend the seconding his royall

fa.ther in his Enterprize, any other then giving
leave to a voluntary Fryer or Twoo in a Shipp
called the Dews nobiscū, to run vpon new
searches yet his noble sonne prince Edw 6.th
entred into so serious consultations of the same,
as he gave therfore to Sebastian Cabot borne
at Bristoll sonne to the father John Cabot a
large pencon out of his Treasury, and Consti-
-tuted him in the Trinity howse graund Pilot
of England, in the second yeare of his raigne
and in the yeare of grace 1548 to vndertake
againe a new search of these straung landz
and had not that towardly yong prince too
vnhappely ben cutt of by an vntymely destine,
he had prosecuted both what the too too
affecting Roome (the otherwise faultles)
Queene Mary: neglected (though phapps
not wth out some princely and aconomick
Colour of reason by Contracted to the spanish
Phillipp whose pretence of right might well
debarr the proceedinge in any such practize
then when the spanishe hartz and pamish
Catholiques dare yet to make good his Title,
vnto all this fourth quarter of the world by

the Donation of a Pope, though against all the Rules of Justice prescription or equality) as also what our never enough admired late sou^raigne Queene Elizabeth did anew revive, and gave a fresh birth and spiritt vnto, somtyme vnder the discharge of one, somclyme of another, vntill at length yt discended vnto and setteled in S^r Walter Rawley, vnto whome & his heires her Ma^tie in the 26 yeare of her reigne & Anno 1584. at Westminster gave a large Patent from 33 to 40 degrees of Latitude, who therfore the same yeare in Aprill sent out Capt. Phillip Amadas and Capt. Arthure Florida Nor-ward, the whole Coast of Cape Britton, so called of the people of S^t Malo who first fownd and fell w^th it, and the 4^th of July following, they arrived vppon the Coast in a Harborow called Hatorask in the height of 36 & one 3. and the 13^th put out their small boates and rowing 7 leagues from that Harborough to an Island called Roanoak where they landed & took possession of the Country in right of the Queenes Ma^tie and after delivered the same over againe to the vse of S^r W^m R.

Caput Secundum.

Of the discovery more in particuler of the Country of Wingandecoa and the Isle of Roanoak, by Capt Amadas, & Capt Barlow, for the behoofe of S^r W. Ral: who presenting their Travailes therin, & the Cart of the Coast to her Ma^tie babtised the Country by the name of Virginia.

When they first had sight of this Country some thought the first Land they saw to be the Continent, but after they had entred the Haven, they saw before them another mighty long Sea, for there lyeth a long the coast a Tract of Islands 200 miles in length adioyning to the Ocean sea, and betweene the Islands two or three entraunces when they were entred betweene them (these Islands being very narrow for the most pte, as in most places vj miles broad, and in some places lesse, in some more) then there appeared the other great Sea, conteyning in breadth in some places 40. and in some 50. in some 20 miles over, before the Continent be come vnto, w^ch Continent the Indians call Wingandacoa, and in this inclosed sea, there are about 100 Islands of divers bignes, whereof the aforesaid Roanoak. 15. 16. miles long, a pleasaunt and firtill grownd, full of Cedars, Saxafras, Currants, Flax, Vines, Deare, Conies, Hares and the tree that beareth the rind of black Synamon of w^ch like Capt. Winter. brought from the Streights of Magellanum, and manie other Comodityes & Riches, the pticulers whereof are more at large

to be seen in Mr. Hariotts discourse.

The chief Kings name governing at that tyme, they found to be Wingina his brother Quangimino, whose wife and daughter came aboard our discoverers Barkes, who were about their foreheadd a band of white Corall and earings of pearle.

The river before Roanoak and wch runneth from thence vp to the citty Skicoak they call Occam, vpon wch likewise standeth the towne of Pameik. 6. dayes iourney from the aforesaid great Citty called Skicoak to the So-ward.

And in this river Occam falleth too other great Rivers, the one called Cyo wherin are great Store of the pearle mussles thother called Nomopana vpon wch standeth Chawanooke not subiect to the king of Wingaudagoa but is a free state, vnder a Lord at that tyme, called Poneno, beyond nth Prouince is another absolute king likewise called Menatonon and these 3 kings were then in league.

From Hattonask to the So-ward 4 daies iourney they discovered Socoto, the last towne Southwardly of the Bownds of Wingandacoa, neere vnto w^ch 20 yeares before these tymes a shipp was cast away, some of the people wherof in an out Island called Wococon saved themselues, and after 3. weekes aboad there fastened 2 Indian Canoas togither, and with their shirts for Sailes made out, but were soone cast away, and the boats found wreckt vpon the out Islands.

And with thus much knowledg of the Country and some Comodityes from the Salvadges obteyned as Chamoyse, Buffo, and Deare skyns, 20 skynes worth 20. nobles for a tyn dish and of other skyns 50. worth 50. Crownes for a Copper kettle & a bracelet of pearle as bigg as pease brought home and deliuered to S^r W^m R: the discoverers returned, and about the midst of September following arrived in the west of England, with two of the native people one Wanchese and the other Manteo, brought along w^th them.

Sr Rich: Grenvile, Generall of the first Colonie of 100 Adventurers.

After the relation of this discovery delivered vp vnto Sr W. R. by the said Captaines, that part of the Country about Roanoack (beyond wch lieth the manie Land) was conceaved to be an apt and likely place both for seat and Riches for a Colony to be transported vnto, wher vpon the next yeare following Anno 1585. Sr W. R. prepared a fleete of 7. sailes wth 100. howsholders, and many thinge necessary to begynne a new state wch in Aprill departed from Rymouth Sr Richard Greenvill Generall of the same accompanied wth many Choyse and principall gentlemen, Mr. Raph Lane, Mr. Thomas Candish, Mr. John Arundell, Mr. Reymond, Mr. Stukely, Mr. Bremige Mr. Vincent, Mr. John Clark, and divers others, some Captaines and other Assistentes for Councell and good Directions in the voyage, all and every of wch in their severall places refused no travaile of body, nor carefulnes of mynd to lay the foundacon and beat the path to that great and goodly worke, wch god I hope by vs in his appointed tyme will nowe finishe to his owne glory, to the

salvation of poore seduced Infidells, and to the never dying fame & honour of those noble and praise worthy Spiritte, who shall prsonally travell in the same.

The most of this Fleete by the 20 of June fell wth the Maine of Florida, and keeping by the Coast, were in some daunger the 25th of a generall wrack on a breach called the Cape of Feare, but the 26. ancored safe at Wocokon by Secota 4. daies Journey short of Hatorask where the Admirall through the vnskilfulnes of the Master streak on grownd, as she was to be brought into the Harbowr and sunck and from whence the Generall sent to Wingina the king at Roan-oak to advertize of his Arrivall, as likewise he sent to the Maine Mr. Arundell with Manteo the Salvadge, and Capt. Aubry and Captaine Boniten to Croatoan where they fownd 2 of their men left there wth 30 other by Capt Raymond, who fell wth yt place certaine dayes before.

Lykewyse from hence the Generall well accom-
-panied in his Tilt boat w^th^ divers of the Gentlemen
aforesaid, and M^r^ Harriott w^th^ 20 others following
in a Pynnace Capt. Armadas and Capt Clark
w^th^ 10 others in a shipp boat Frawncys
Brooke and John White in another ship boat
prased over the water to the maine land,
victualled for eight daies, In w^ch^ voyage they
discovered the townes of Pomeioke Aquascо-
-goke & Secotan, and the great Lake called
by the Salvages Paquippe and so returned
and the 27^th^ of July ancored the fleet at Hatorask
and there rested, from whence he landed all
his Planters. and those w^ch^ were to remayne
in the Country in the aforesaid Island of
Roanoak togither w^th^ such provisions as were
to be left for their vse, after w^ch^ having
settled some orders amongst the principall
Comaunders, and Constituted M^r^ Raph Lane
Gouernour of the Colony, advising with
him in many necessary busineses to be
pfourmed, the 25^th^ of August he sett saile
againe for England, and the 18^th^ of October
following w^th^ a prize a spanish shipp of

300 Tonne arrived in Plymouth.

The pticularyties of such busineſses as were pformed by Mr. Raphe Lane, the Captaynes and Gentlemen and the rest of the Colony to the nomber (as aforesaid) of 100 there remayning for one whole yeare, may be further seene in the book of Discoueries.

Of the hopefull Riuer of Maratico, & the Mayne of Copper therein.

Only I cannot but remembr and mencyone the River of Maratock vpon wch the Mangoags haue traffique and wch River openeth into the broad Sownd of Weapemiock, running wth a violent Current from the West and Sowest as broad as the Thames betweene Greenewich and the Isle of Doggs and as London Bridge vpon a vale water, the head being 30 daies from Roanoak wch head springeth out of a Mayne Rock in that aboundance, that forth wth yt maketh a most violent streame and wch Rock standeth soe neere vnto a Sea that many tymes in stormes, the wynd arrising outwardly from the Sea the waues therof are beaten in to the

said fresh streame, soe that the fresh water for a certaine space groweth salt & brackish and w^ch Maratock by M^r Harriotts opynion either arriseth out from the Bay of Mexico, or ells from very neere vnto the same that openeth out of the South Sea.

This River maketh p^mise of great things, for vp the same the Mangoags haue Recourse and Traffique in a Prouince called Chauins Temoatan, where there is a marvellous and most straunge Minerall to the Chawanooks and all the people to the west ward most notorious, the Minerall they call Wassador w^ch is Copper but they call by the name of Wassador euery Mettell whatsoeu^r they say yt is of the Cullour of our Copp, but our Copper saie they, is better then theirs, and the reason is because yt is redder and harder, whereas that of Chauins Temoatan is very soft and pale the manner of taking w^ch mettell out of the river, I referr to the discourse at large, and of many things ells therein Conteyned especyally of the treachery of many of the Sauage Weroances

to the rooting out and cutting off the whole Colony as of Pemipan of Roanoak Okisco King of Weapmeiock wth the Mandoags & the Chesapeians wth 700 vppon the Mayne of Dasamanquepeio as also how Mr Lane acquitted himself of their conspiracie as not altogither necessary for this place I overpasse.

Only be yt remembred how that after the Colony had laboured herein many searches and acquired many knowledges eleaven monthes expecting the retourne of their Generall wch a Ianck and new supplye out of England, and being in some wants for necessarye and fresh victualls, had dispersed themselves into sondry parts of the Countrey, the better to be fitted and accomodated wth the provisions therof. Capt. Stafford lying then wth 20 in his Company in Croatan my Lord Admiralls Island about the begynning of June, had escried a great fleet of many Shippes, vppon the Coast and standing in as he conceaved for Hatorask of wch he gave speedy Intelligence vnto the Fort at Roanoak who were not a little

amazed wth the nomber of the shippes not con-
-ceaving what they might be, in the midst of
wch doubtfulnes of theires, the whole fleete arrived
in the bad Harborow of Hatoraske, and was
soone found to be Sr Fraunces Drake and
his Company returning home this way from
the sacking of St Domingo, Carthagena, and
St Augustine, who sending his boate off to
Roanoak and having intelligence from the
Governour of the Condicon of wch the Colony
then stood of their many wants and daily
expectance of supply from England (the
generall by promise appointing to have bene
there by the first of the Spring Sr Fraunces
Drake much comending their patience and
noble Spiritts and applauding so good an
accon consulted wth his Captaines & Concluded
to leave them a barke of 70 Tonne called the
Fraunces to serve them vppon all occasions
wth too Pinnaces 4 small boats and 2
experimented Sea maisters Abraham Kendall
and Griffeth Herne, to tarry wth them wth a
Supply of Callivers, Handweapons, Match, Lead,
tooles, appell and such like wth victualls

for 100 men for 4 monthes, all wch whilst they were in hand in all hast to be prepared for them and in 2 daies almost dispatcht, the officers accepting of their Charge and the 2 maisters busy abourd, the said appointed Barke the 13th of the said month of June, there arrose such an vnwonted storme and Contynued 4 daies that had like to have driven the whole Fleet a shoare, the only shift was to weigh anchor and put to Sea to save themselves, and in the same Barke appointed to stey freeing her self was carried wth the violence of the storme so far in fower dayes that at length she was forct to make for England wth others of the Fleete.

Howbeit Sr Fraunces Drake riding yet out after the storme examyning the Ofs would have left them another goodly Shipp of the burden of 170 tonne called the Bark Bonner wch Maisters and Guydes to tarry there, but yt being better considered, the harbour so vnfitt for a shipp of that burthen to be winter Roader in, and many other things considered, the Determinacon of all was altered,

and yt was conceaved more convenient to take in all the Planters & Come for England, w^ch vnhappely was accordingly p̄fourmed, and soe the 19^th of June setting saile, the 27 July they arrived in Portsmouth Anno 1586.

Cap. 4^th.

A new Supply sent by Sr W^m Raleigh vnto his Colony vnhappely brought away before by Sr F. Drake

Yet as the Colony that whole yeare did their endeavo^rs there Sr W^m R did as carefully intend the supplying of them here, preparinge a fleet of 3 shippes well appointed to accompany Sr Richard Greenvile w^th a barke of Aviso freighted w^th all manner of thinge in most plentifull manner for the relief of the Colony, and to give them intelligence of the Generalls speedy hasteninge after him, the only fault and errour was, that both this Fleete and Barke of Aviso were not sett out till the Spring was far spent, and it was after Easter before this Barke of Aviso sett forth, whose arriving at Hatarask and not finding the Colony (brought awaye as you have heard) returned w^th all the aforesaid p̄vision into England againe.

Not fully 40. or 50. dayes after the

depture of this Barke of Aviso from Hatarask Sr Richard Greeneuile arrived wth his 3 shippes well appointed, and not finding the said Barke nor any newes of the English Colony (himself travelling vp into diuers places of the Country) yet vnwilling to lose the possession of the same, after good deliberacon, he left 15 men in the Islands of Roanoak furnished plentifully with all manner of provision for 2 yeares and depted agayne for England.

These Checks found this pious busines even in her early daies and first begynning, howbeyt yt did not yet make wcary the forward mynd of Sr W. R: to have this country by a full possession added vnto our owne who therfore prepared a fourth voyage and a new Colony of 150 howsholders who the 8th of May in the yeare following 1587. wcyed Anchor from Plymmouth vnder the charge of John White whome he appointed Governour, and also appointed vnto him 12 Assistents vnto whome he gave a Charter and encorporated them by the name of Governour and Assistents of the Cittye Raleigh

A second Colonie sent by Sr W. Ralegh of 150 howsholders Anno 1587 vnder the comaund of John White.

in Virginia wch Fleet consisting of 3 sayle the 22 July following arrived at Hatarask where they came to an Anchor, from whence the Governour accompanied wth 40 of his best men in a small Pynnace stood in for Roanoak meaning to take in the aforesaid 15 men left there by Sr Richard Greenvile the yeare before, and so to alter their seat vnto the Chesapeak Bay according to directions from Sr W.R. but the Governour being overruled by some of the Company was diverted from that purpose, and in a manner constrained to seeke no further, but to sitt downe in that Island againe, who accordingly brought all the Planters and Provisions a shoare, where they beganne to fitt & accomo-date themselues, nor could they heare of any of the aforesaid 15. but found the bones of one, and the people of Croatan gave or people to vnderstand how they were slayne, sett vpon by 30 of the men of Secotan Aquacogoc & Dasamonguepeuk conveying themselves vpon a tyme secretly behind the Trees neere the howses, where our men carelessly lived, & in the encounter knockt out the braynes of one

w^th a woodden sword and killed another w^th an arrowe shot into the mouth of him, whilst the rest fled to the waters side, where their boat laye, and all of them taking the boat rowed towards Hatarask and relanded on a litle Island, on the right hand of o^r Entraunce into the Harbour of Hatarask, where they remayned a while, but afterward departed, and could never after be heard of.

The Governour calling to Councell his Assistants found that the Colony stood in want of many necessary things both to secure & settle them in their Plantation, wherefore yt was constulted upon, that some one should be forth w^th dispatcht into England to ymportune the better supplie to be there betymes the next yeare, and at length by a generall Consent, the Governour him self was thought to be the fittest to undertake the busines, and therfore prepared the Admirall & fly boat to sett forward w^th all speed, the whilst he established some things amongst them, and having Christened a grand child of his owne borne

there (his daughter being married to one of the Company) and calling yt Virginia, he caused liekwise Manteo, the Savage to be Christened by Sr W. R: his appointment, and in reward of his faithfulnes entitled him Lord of Roanoak and of Dasamongwepeuk after wch in August he depted for England wth the fore said Flibboat and Admirall, and about the begynning of Nouember the one landed at Hampton, the other at Portsmouth.

Vpon his arrivall he left not to solliecyte for a supplye accordingly to be sent betymes the next yeare, and as Carefull was Sr W. R: to provide him, howbeit such were ye occasions of the ymployment of our Shippes in 88. and the yeare folloing that it was March 1590. before Capt. White could be dispatcht for Virginia, who then wth three Shippes put to Sea from Plymouth and the 23 of July had sight of the Cape of Florida and the broken Islandes thereof called the Martyrs and the 15th of August came to an anchor at Hatarask from whence he man'd two boats to row to Roanoak shooting

off two Mynions and a Falcon to give warning to the Colony but the billow was so rough and the wynd rose so high at Nor-east and the vndiscreet steerage of the Masters mate in a Boat where a chief Captaine was Capt. Spicer was such a dangerous Sea breaking on the quarter oversett yt and the boat twice or thrice turned the keile vpwardes, nor could the men save themselves in swymmyng in so great a Sea, in so much that of 11 seaven of the Chiefest were drowned Capt. Spicer himself and 6 more.

The which mischaunce did so much dis-comfort the lazie and vnfaithfull Saylers, that they were all in an vproare & murmure not to go any further to seeke the Planters, howbeit Capt. White & Capt. Cooke compelled them, who therfore being 19 psons in both boate put off from Hatarask once more, and rowed to that pte of the Island of Roanoak where the Colony was left seated, but yt was so darke before they fell wth the shoare, that they overshott the place a quarter of a mile where yet espieing of a light towards the North-end of the Island

they made towarde yt, and letting fall their
Grapnells nere the Shoare, sounded w^th a trumpett
a Call, and afterwards many familyer English Tunes
as of songs & called out freindly to the Shoare-ward
but all the while had no answere, at breake of day
they landed, and went through the woodes to that
part of the Island directly over against Dasaman-
-guepeuk, and from thence returned by the water
syde rownd about the Northeren point of the
Island vntill they came to the place where the
Colony was left 1586. some tracte of Footing they
found, and vpon a Sandy banck on a tree Curiously
carved these Romaine Letters Cro, w^ch gave them
hope they might be removed to Croatan for
their Agreement was indeed to remove when
Capt. White sought them no further but
missing them there and his Company havinge
other practizes and w^ch those tymes afforded
they returned Covetous of some good succese
vpon the Spanish Fleete to returne that yeare
from Mexico and the Indies neglecting thus
these vnfortunate & betrayed people of whose
end you shall yet hereafter read in due place
in this decade.

Cap. 5.th

The vnfaithfulnes of such who were imployed miscarried the Colonie

Thus Sr W. R: wearied wth so great an expence & abused wth the vnfaithfulnes of the ymployed after he had sent (as you maye see by these 5 severall tymes Collonies and supplies at his owne Charges & now at length both himself and his succours thus betrayed, he was even nowe content to commit the fortune of the poore mens lives, and lief of the holy accon yt self into the favor & p'tecc'on of the god of all mercy, whose will and pleasure he submitted vnto to be fulfilled as in all thinge ells, so in this one p'ticuler, by which meanes for 17 or 18 yeares togeather yt lay neglected vntill yt pleased god at length to move againe the heart of a great and right noble Earle amongst vs.

It is a new revived by the Right Hon.ble Henry Earle of Southampton.

Candidus et talos a vertice pulcher ad imos.

Henry Earle of Southampton to take yt in considera-tion & seriously to advise how to recreat and dipp yt a new into spiritt and life, who therfore (yt being so the will of the eternall wisdome, and so let all Christian and Charitable hearts believe in Compassion to this people) begvne to make new

enquiries and much scrutany after the Country to examyne the former proceedings togither wth the lawfulnes and pious end therof, and then having well weighed the greatnes & goodnes of the cause he lardgly contributed to the furnishing out of a Shipp to be comaunded by Capt. Bartholemew Gosnoll and Capt. Bartholemew Gilbert and accompanyed wth divers other gentlemen to discover a Convenyent place for a new Colony to be sent thither who accordingly in March &c. 1602 from Falmouth in a Bark of Dartmouth called the Concord sett forward holding a Course for the Nerth & to of Virginia.

Samuell Mace, lost despatched into Virginia by Sr W. Raleigh.

At wch tyme likewise Sr W. R: once more bought a Bark and hired all the Company for wages by the month ymploying therein for Chief Samuell Mace (a sufficyent Marriner, who had bene twice before at Virginia) to fynd out those people, wch he had sent last thither (as before remembred) by Capt. White 1587. and who if so be they could happely light vpon them were like enough to instruct vs the more effectly in the qualities of the Natives & condicon of the

approved Country. wch Barke depted from Waymouth
the said Moneth of March Ao likewise 1602. to hold
a Southwardly Course for Virginia, and wch
accordingly fell 40 leagues to the So-west ward of
Hatarask. in 34 degrees or there about& and having
there spent a moneth trading wth ye people for
their owne, when they scattred along the Coast, and
according to their Charge should have sought
the people, both in the Islands, and vpon the
Mayne in divers appointed places, they did yt
not, pretending that the extreamity of weather &
lose of some principall ground Tackling, forced
and feared them from searching the port at
Hatarask the Isle of Croatan, or any parte of the
Mayne of Dasamonguepeuk and therfore taking
in some quantity of Saxafras, at that tyme of
a good value worth some iij^{s} the ^{li} Chyna
roote Cassia lignia, & the rynd of the Tree wch
growes there, more strong then any spice, the
vertue wherof at length is nowe well knowne
wth divers other Comodities, they returned and
broaght no Comfort or new accesse of hope
concerning the lives and safety of the vnfor-
-tunate English people, for wch only they were

sett forth, and the charg of this Imployment was under-taken.

Cap. 6.

The Succes of the good Ship called the Concord set forth by the Earle of Southampton & comaunded by Capt. Bar: Gosnold for discovery; upon a right Lyne falling about Sachadehoc.

The good Ship the Concord, as you have heard setting forth wth this about the 14th of Maye following making land in 43 degrees of the North Latitude had better succese for the Comanders therin intending faithfully the end of their goeing forth discovered many goodly rivers, Islands, and a pleasant Contyment and the Indians in the said height in Bask, Shallops wth Maast and Sayle, Iron grapples & Kettles of Copper, came boldly abourd them appelled wth wastcoats and breeches some of black sordge some of blew Cloth made after the Sea fashion, wth hose and shooes on their feet, a people tall of Stature, broad & grym visaged their eye browes paynted, white and yt seemed by some wordes and Signes which they made that some Barks, or of St John de Luz had fished and traded in this place.

But the Ship riding here in no good Harborow, and wth all the weather doubted

the Mr stood off againe into the Sea Southwardly, and soone after found himself imbayed with a mighty headland, where comming to an anchor wth in a league of the Shoare, Capit. Gosnold comanded the Shallop to be trymed out and went a Shoare where he pceaved this headland to be pcell of the Mayne, and sondry Islandz lying almost rownd about yt, whereupon thus satisfied he repaired aboard againe, where during the tyme of his absence wch was not above 6. howers he found the Ship so furnished wth excellent Codfish wch they had hauled, that they were Compelled to through numbers of them overboard agayne in so much yt left this belief in them all, that in this Season namely Aprill and Maye there maye vpon this Coast in this height (as I said of about 43.) be as good fishing and in as great plenty as in the New found land, and they were the more probably confirmed therein by the skulls of Macharells, Herrings, Cod, and other Fish wch they daily saw, as they went and came from the Shoare, the place beside where they tooke these Codz being but in 7 Fathome

water, and wth in lesse then a league of the Shoare, when in New found land they fish 40. or 50. fathome water and far off vpon the banck.

This headland therefore they called Cape Cod, from whence they sayled round about the same almost all the points of the Compasse, the shoare very bold, at length they came amongst many faier Islands 3 especyally, those wch they had discerned vpon the Land, all lying wth in a league or twoo one of another, and not above 6. or 7. leagues of the Mayne, the one whereof Capt Gosnoll called Marthaes Viniard, being stored wth such an incredible nomber of wynes, aswell in the wooddy parte of the Island, where they runne vpon every tree as on the Outward partes, that they could not goe for treading vpon them, the second full of Deare, Fowle and glistering Minerall stones, he called by his owne name Gosnolls Island, The 3de about some sixtene miles in Compasse containing many peece and necks of Land little differinge from severall Islands saving that certaine bancks of small breadth like

Bridges seemed to joyne them to this Island he called Elizabeth Island vpon this Island they did sow for a tryall in sundry places, Wheate, Barley, Oats & Pease wch in 14 dayes were sproung vp nyne Inches and more, On the Nor-West side of this Island neere to the Sea-side, they found a standing Lake of fresh water almost 3 English miles in Compasse, in the midst whereof stood a little pretty plott or Grove of Wood an acre in quantity or not much above, the Lake full of Tortoises and exceedingly frequented wth all sorts of Fowle, wch breed some lowe on the banckes and others on lowe trees about the Lake in great aboundance, whose younge ones they tooke and eate at their pleasure, also therein they found divers sorts of Shelfish as Shallops, Mushells, Cockles, Lobsters, Crabs, Oysters and Wilks and the Mayne against yt had many Meadowes large and full of greene grasse, even in the most wooddy places the trees growing so distinct & apart one tree from another, as was passeable for horse or Coach wth a broad Harborow or Rivers mouth, wch ran vp into yt, most Comodious

& promising a goodly seat: the people thereon (for they will appeare 40. or 50. at a tyme togither upon the water in severall Canoas,) would come downe & trade for furs of Beauers, Luzernes, Marternes, Otters, wild catt Skyns, Seale Skyns and other beast Skines to ours vnknowne & w^ch they would exchaunge for Knives Babies beades, and such toyes they wore also great store of Copper about them, some very redd and some paller cullour, none of them but had Chaines earings & Collers of this mettall, as also they had large deincking Cupps made like Skulls, and other thine plates of Copper, made much like o^r boar speare blades, and when o^r people were desirous to vnderstand, where they had such store of this Mettall, and made signes to them concerning the same, they tooke a peece of Copper in their hands and made a hole w^th their fingers in the ground, and w^th all pointed to the higher grownds.

Within the aforesaid grove in the midst of the Lake mentioned Capt. Fosnoll did deter-mayne w^th xj more besides himself who promised to tarry w^th him, to sitt downe & fortefie, pur-

-posing to send the Pynnace home into England by Capt Gilbert for new & better preparations to be returned the next yeare againe, and for the same purpose he built a large house and Covered it w^th sedge w^ch grew about the Lake in great abundance In buylding whereof were 3. weekes and more spent.

But after the trading w^th the Indians and the Bark had taken in so many Furrs, Skyns some Sarzafras and other Comodities, as were thought Convenient most of those 11. who before had given their to stay w^th Capt. Gosnoll, having possessed themselves with a covetous conceipt of their vnlookt for Marchandize, that they would be very profitable to them at their returne home vpon the sale thereof at the best hand, making nothing but present gayne, the end and object of this good work would not nowe by any meanes be treated w^th to tarry behind the shipp casting many doubts as how if the shipp should miscarry going home, or arriving not to be supplied, or supplied miscarry in the returne, and such like; Capt.

Gosnoll was faine to yeld to the pnte necessity and leaving this Island w^th^ many sorrowfull loth to depte about the midst of June weyed w^th^ faire wyndes and the myddst of July arrived againe in Exmouth in five monthes thus finishing this discovery and returning w^th^ giving many Comforts and those right true ones concerning the benefitt of a plantation in those partes.

Capt. 7.

Much was comended the diligence and relation of Capt. Gosnoll, howbeit this voyage alone could not satisfie his so intent a spiritt and ambition in so great and glorious an enterprise, as his Lo^p^ the forcsaid Earle of Southampton. who laboured to have yt so begynne, as that yt might be contynued w^th^ all due & prepared Circumstances and safety, and therefore would his Lo^p^ be Concurrant the second tyme in a new Survey and dispatch to be made thither, w^th^ his brother in Lawe, Tho: Arundell Baron of Warder who prepared a ship for Capt. Georg Waymouth w^ch^ sett sayle from Ratcliff in March a^o^ 1605. and w^ch^ about the midst of Maye following fell w^th^ the Land an Island

Capt. George Waymouths voyage, vpo a right Lyne, not seekeing the wynd in the accustomed right of the West-Indies, falling with Shadehoe & the discovery of that River.

vnto the Mayne of the Coast of America, in the height, as he found yt of aboute 42. who from thence casting it Nor-ward to 44. what paynes he tooke may witnes the many convenyent places vpon the Mayne and Isles & Rivers, togither w^th that little one of Pamaquid and of his search 60 miles vp the most excellent and benefic yall River of Sachadehoc w^ch he found capable of shippinge for trafique of the greatest burden a benefitt indeed alwaies to be accompted, the richest treasure to any land, for w^ch we for o^r Severne & Thames, and Fraunce for Loire Seine, and the River of Burdeux, and the Lowe Countries for their ynnumerable navigable Rivers, receave our and their greatest wealth, next he found the Land faire, and the whole Coast bold to fall w^th, and then a safe Harbowr for shipps to ride in, w^ch hath besides w^th out the River in the Channell and Sowndes about the Island adioyning to the mouth therof, so desired a road as yt is Capable of an Infinite nomber of Shippes, the River likewise yt self as yt runneth vpp into the Mayne for very neere 40 miles toward & the

high Inland mountaines, he found to beare in breadth a mile, sometymes three quarters and half a mile the narrowest, never under 4 or 5 fathome water, hard by the Shoare, and 6. 7. 8. 9 and 10 fathomes all a long and on both sides, every half mile very gallant Coves some almost able to Conteyne 100. sayle, where the grounde is soft ouze w^th a tuffe clay under for anchor hold, and where shipps may lye w^thout eyther anchor or Cable onlye moared to the Shoare w^th a hauser, and w^ch floweth 18 or 20 foot at high water w^th fit Docke to graue or carine shippes of all burthens, secured from all windes, w^ch is so necessarye and incomparable a benefitt, that in few places in England or in any parte of Christendome, Art w^th great Charges can make the like besides the bordering Land most Comodious and firtill trending all along on both sides in an equall plaine neither Mountaynes nor rockye but virged with a greene border of grasse, sometymes 3 or 4 acres sometymes 8. or 10. togither, so making tender vnto the eye of the Surveyour her fertility and pleasure, and w^ch would be much more if

by clensing away her woddes shee were Converted into goodly meadowe, and the wodd she beareth is not shrubbish, fitt only for Fewell, but goodly Oake, Birch tall Fiere and Spruse, w^ch in many places grow not so thick togither, but may w^th small labour be made feeding grownd being plentifully stoared like the outward Islands w^th fresh water springs w^ch streame down in many places the woddes here are full of Deare, Hares, and other beasts and reasonably well inhabited by the Natives of mild and good Condicons, many princes (as about vs w^th in the Chesapeak Bay and about Roanoack) governed in Chief by a principall Commaunder or Prince, whom they call Bashaba, who hath vnder him divers Petty Kings w^ch they call Sagamoes, the same w^ch the Indians in o^r more Towardly parts call Weroances all rich in divers kindes of excellent furrs.

To take possession of this land & goodly River for his Ma.^tie Capt. Weymouth thought it fitt to make vp to the Head of the River, w^ch he did well 60. miles in his barge and

as the streame trended westward into the Mayne and at that height yt beganne to narrowe; so he there sett vpp a Crosse wth his Matie Inscription thereon, obserueing all the waye that in no place eyther about the Island, or vpe in the Mayne, or all alongst the River, there could be discerned any one token or signe, that ever any Christian had ben theire before, of wch either by cutting woode, digging for water or setting vp Crosses (memorialls seldome omitted) by Christian Trauellers, they might haue perceaved some testimonye or mention might haue bene left, and after this search Capt. Weymouth being well satisfied wth Instruccon & knowledge of soe comodious a seat, sett sayle for England, and the 18. of July following arrived before Dartmouth.

Vpon his returne his goodly report ioyning wth Capt. Gosnolls caused the Busines wth the Sperous and faire Starrs to be accompanied, as it not only encouraged the said Earle, the foresaid Lord Arundell being by this tyme Chaunged in his Intendement vp this waye; and engaged so far to the Archduke before returne

of this Ship, that he no more thought upon the Accon but likewise called forth many fayne and harty Lovers, and some likewise long affected therunto, who by conjoyning therefore humble peticoners to his Ma.tie for the advauncement of the same (as for the only Enterprise reserved unto his daies that was yet left unaccomplisht, wherevas god might be abundantly made knowen, his name enlarged and honoured, a notable Nation made fortunate, and our selves famous) yt well pleased his Ma.tie whoin all his practizes & Consultations hath ever sought god more then himself and the advaunce-ment of his glory, ffessing deadly enmity no prince soe much wth ignoraunce and errour adding to her Christia Praenomen Virginia, the Surname of Britannia to cause his Pres to be made Patents the 10th of Aprill 1606. in the 4th yeare of his Ma.ties raigne of England and 39 of Scotland for 2 Colonyes, the one consisting of divers Knights, gentlemen, Marchaunts and others of the Citty of London, called the first Colony. and the other of sondry Knights gentle-men and others of the Citty of Bristoll, Exeter and ye Towne of Plymouth and other places

called the second Colonye.

This last since yt had his end so untymely, by the death of the vpright and noble gentleman Late Lord chief Iustice of England, chief Patron of the same Sr John Popham knight, and since the Order and Methode of a full History doth clayme of me the remembrance of the most materiall points at least, as well of this late Northeren Colony as of the first plainted more to the South. I haue not thought yt amisse to epitomize a fewe thinge (and wch haue not yet by any one bene publ- -ished or written of) of the same, by wch lide- wise (as I maye the better descend into the Occurrance of o' owne) maie be the Cliere confirmed the Story of all three, the one by the other, where the Congruity (meaninge the Comodityes of the Country, nature of the Soyle, and qualities of the people) betweene all three is so full and answearable.

At what tyme the Aduentures of the first Colonye Anno. 1606. had prepared all thinge fitt, wth a fleet of 3. saile for Capt. Caput 8. A Colonie sent out to seite within the River of Sacha- dehoc by the

The Hons: Sr John Popham knight, Lord Chiefe Justice of England: under the government of Capt Popham, & Capt Gilbert: of the Spaniards surprising of a ship of Bristoll, sent for the use of the Colonie.

Christopher Newport to transport a Colony of 100. to begynne the Plantation, wch in the Chesapeak Bay, the foresaid Sr John Popham likewise prepared a tall shipp well furnished belonging to Bristoll and the River of Kenebeke wch many Planters wch sett out from Plymmouth about Maye Haines maister to settle a Plantacon in the River of Sachadehoc, wch making his Course for the Islands of Flores and Corvo one morning about the Island of Gratiosa, the Spanish Fleet comynge from Mexico, had sight of yt, gave it chase, and soone tooke yt, and understanding by exaiacon whither she was outward bound, and for what purpose, they tooke the Capt. whose name was Marlyn Pryn out of her, togither wth the maister and most of the passengers, dispersing them into divers shipps of their owne, & so held their Course carrying ours along wth them for Spaine, howbeyt one of the Fleete wherein 3 or 4 of the English were togither, by the Steerage of the English who tooke their turnes at the helme, and not being observed altered their Course, or whither by contrary wyndy compelled, true yt is vpon observacon, the Spanish Pilott not

knowing where he was unlooked for fell vpon the Coast of Fraunce w^th in the River of Burdeux where they would have concealed the English and stowed them therefore vnder hatches, had they not happely bene ꝑceaved by some of the French which came aboard and obteyned them of the Spaniard, and carried them a shoare, at what tyme one of them Daniell Tucker gent made complaint vnto the Officers of the place of this wronge offred vnto them, and in his Ma^tes name caused this Shipp to be stayed and arrested vntill the Court in Paris might determyn of the same, but the Spaniard had too golden an advocate a West-Indian purse comynge newly from thence, and therefore after some litle attendaunce easily freed himself from the Incumbraunce and made for Spaine w^th malice Inough to entreat the other captiued English whome they had dispersed and made Slaves in their Gallions.

Howbeyt the late Lord chief Iustice would not for all this hard handell, and Spanish mischief give over his determinacon for

planting of a Colony w^ch in the aforesaid so goodly a Country upon the River of Sachadehoc, but against the next yeare prepared a greater number of Planters, and better provisions, w^ch in two shipps he sent thither, a Fly boat called the Gift of God wherein a kinsman of his George Popham comaunded and a good shipp called the Mary and John of London wherein Raleigh Gilbert comaunded w^ch w^ch 120 psons for Planters brake ground for Plymmouth in June 1607. w^ch the 25^th fell w^th Gratiosa and the 28^th tooke in wood and water at Flores, and Corvo, from whence they allways kept their Course to the westward as much as wynd and weather would p^mitt, in w^ch Course to the West and West nor West as the wynd would give leave, they ran twoo hundred Leagues from Flores, and in the latitude of 42 degrees, they found the Compasse to be varied one whole pointe. June 1607.

From whence they stood still to the West-ward untill the 27. of July, being then in the Latitude of 43 and $\frac{2}{3}$ where they threw out

the dipsing lead, and had ground but 20 fathome and 22 fathome vppon a banck, and here they fisht some 3 howers and took neere 200 of Cod, very great fish and where they might have laden their ship in litle tyme.

From hence they stood in for the Mayne, the wynd being at So-west, and as they ran in for the land, they alwaies sounded from this banck, and having run some 12 Leagues from the banck Nor-west, they sounded and had 60. fathome Ouze ground black, the wynd now growing scant, they were constreyned to stand for the So-ward, and made South So-west way. and sounded againe the next daye being the 28th of July and had 30 fathome, small stones and white shells fishing ground.

29. they made a west-waie vntill noone, and then sounded had 160. fathome black Ouze.

30. about of the Clock in the morning they had sight of the land, and yt bore of them Nornwest, they sounded being 10.

leagues from the shoar, and had 100. fathomes black Ouze, they made towards the shoare, but could not recover yt before the night took them, for wch they were constrayned to beare of a litle from the land, and lye a hull all that night, where they found abundance of fish very larg and great, and the water deepe hard abourd the Shoare, 18 or 20 fathome.

30. Standing in for the shoare in the after noone they came to an Anchor vnder an Island, for all this Coast is full of Islands but very sound and good for shipping to passe by them, and the water deepe hard abourd them, they had not bene at an Anchor, 2 howres when there came a Spanishe Shallop to them from the shoare, in her eight Savady men and a litle Salvadge Boy. whoe at the first rowed about them, and would not come abourd, not with standing they proffered them bread, knives, beades, and other small trifles, but having gazed a while vpon the shipp, they made shewe to departe howbeyt when they were a litle from them, they returned againe, and boldly came vp into

the shipp & three of them stayed all night aboard, the rest depted and went to the shoare, shewing by signes that they would returne the next daye.

August

The first of August the same Saluadges returned w^th 3. women w^th them in another Biskey Shallop bringing w^th them many Beaver skyns to exchaunge for knyves and beades, the Sagame of that place they told them, Mesamot, seated vppon a River, not farr off w^ch they called Emanuell, the Saluadges depting they hoisted out their bote, and the Pilott Capt. R. Davies w^th 12 others rowed into the Bay wherein their ship road, and landed on a gallant Island where they found Goose-berries, Strawberries, Raspices, Hurts, and all the Island full of huge high Trees of divers sorts after they had delighted themselves there a while they returned aboard againe, and observed the place to stand in 44 degrees 1/3.

2. About midnight, the moone shining bright, & the wynd being faire at Nor. east they depted from this place setting their

Course So-west foe so the Coast lieth.

3. early in the morning they were faire by the shoar a league from yt, and saw many Islands of great bignes, and many great Sownds going betwixt them but made proofe of none of them, but found great stoare of fish all along the Coast.

4. they were thwart of the Cape of Headland wch stands in 43. degrees the shipp being in 42. degrees 30 minuts betwixt the place they were nowe at, and the said Cape or Head-land, yt is all full of Islands, and deepe Sownds for any shipping to goe in by them, and where is exceeding good fishing for Cod. great & small bigger then what comes from the banck of the Newfownd land, this Cape is Lowland shewing white like sand, but it is all whit rocke, and a strong tyde goeth there, they ran wth in half a league of the Cape, and from thence the Land fell awaye, and falls in from this Headland Nor-West, and by Nore, and Nor-West they kept their Course from this Headland, and

came to three Islands where they found a ledge of Rocks to the So-ward, wch made them hale of from them, and the wynd being at Nor-est they rafsed them, keeping their Coast still West and by South and West So-West vntill 12. of the Clock at night, and made from this Headland in all 30 leagues.

5. they made a West, Nor-West way, from 4 of the Clock in the morning vntill 3. of the Clock in the after noone, and made 15 leagues, and then they saw the Land againe for from the Cape before named they saw noe more Land but those 3 Islands vntill now in wch tyme they ran 45. leagues, and the Land bore of them, when they sawyt foiste, Nor-west and by North, and yt shewed yt self in this foeme, 9. leagues or more from yt; there be three high mountaynes that lie in on the Land, the Land called Segohquet, neere about the River of Penobscot.

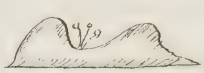
They stood towards this high land vntill 12 of the Clock noone the next daye and they found the ship to be by observation in 43 and ½.

6. from 12 of the Clock noone they kept their Course due West and came neere vnto the three Islands lying low and flatt by the water shewing white to the water, as if it were sand, but it is white rock, making shew a farr off almost like Doner Cliffes. there lyeth S.-west from the Easternmost of the 3 Islands a white rockye Istand and those other 3 Islands lye one of the other east and west, for they stood their Course West fast by them, and as they stood to the Westward, the high land before spoken made shewe of this forme, beazing of them then Nor.-West.

From hence they kept still their Course West and by Noone towards 3. other Islands wch they saw lying from those Islands 8. leagues &c about 10. of the Clock at night having sent in their boat before night to make yt they bore in for one of them, wch they afterwards named St George his Island, they sounded all along

as they came in, and found very deepe water hard about yt 40. fathome, in the morning they were envyroumed every way w^th Islands, they told vpward of 30. Islands from abourd their shipp very good sayling out betweene them.

7. they weyed Anchor, therby to ride in more safety howsoeu the wynd should happen to blow, how be yt before they put from the Island they found a Croſse sett vp, one of the same w^ch Capt. George Weyman in his discovery for all after occasions left vpon this Island, having sayled to the westward they brought the high Land before spoken of to the North, and then yt showed thus.



About midnight Capt. Gilbert caused his shipps boat to be manda w^th 14 psons and the Indian Skidwares (brought into England by Capt. Weyman) and rowed to the Westward from their shipp to the River of Pamaquid,

wch they found to be 4. Leagues distant from their Shipp where she road, the Indian brought them to the Salvages howses, where they found 100. men women & Children, and theire chief Comaunder or Sagamo, amongst them named Nahanada, who had ben brought likewise into England by Capt. Wayman and returned thither by Capt. Hanam setting forth for those parts and some part of Canada the yeare before, at their first comyng the Indians betooke them to their armes their bowes, and arrowes, but after Nahanada had talked wth Skidwares and p̄ceaved that they were English men, he caused them to laye aside theire bowes and arrowes, and he himself came vnto them, and ymbraced them, and made them much welcome & entertayned them wth much chierfulnes, and did they likewise him, and after two howers thus enterchangeably spent they returned abound againe.

Capit. 9. Of som Accidents, happening in the first Settlement of this Northern Colonie.

9. Sonday the chief of both the shipps wth the greatest pt of all the Company landed on the Island where the Crosse stood, the wch they called St Georges Island, and heard a Sermon

delivered vnto them by Mr Seymour, his preacher, and soe returned abourd againe.

10. Capt: Popham manned his Shallop, and Capt: Gilbert his ship boat wth 50 psons in both, and depted for the River of Pomaguid, carrieng wth them Skidwares and arrived in the mouthe of the River, there came forth Nahanada, wth all his Company of Indians, wth their bowes and arrowes in their handes, they being before his dwelling howse would not willingly, have all our people come on shoare vsing them in all kind sort after their manner, neverthelesse after one hower, they all suddenly wthdrew themselves into the woodes, nor was Skidwares desirous to returne wth them any more abourd, our people both to proffer any vyolence vnto him by drawing him by force, suffred him to stay behind, pmising to returne to them the next daye following, but he did not, after his depture they imbarked themselves, and rowed to the further side of the River, and there remayned on the shoare for that night.

11. they returned to their Shipps towards the Evening where they still road vnder St Georges Island.

12. they weyed Anchors and sett saile to goe for the River of Sachadehoc, they had little wynd, and kept their Course West.

13. they were South of the Island of Sutguin a League from yt, and yt riseth in this forme hereunder, but they did not take yt to be Sutguin, soe the weather beinge very faire, they sought the Islands further to the westward, but at length fyndinge that they had overshott yt, they bore vp helme, but were some becalmed, by wch meanes they were constrayned to remayne at Sea, when about midnight there arose a mighty storme vpon them wch put them in great danger, by reason they were so neere the shoare and could not get off, the wynd all the while at South, and yt blew very stiffe soe as they were compelled to turne yt to and agayne, hard abourd the Leeshoare, many Rocks and Islands vnder their Lee

hard by them, but god be thanked they escaped
vntill yt was daye, the storme still contynuyng
vntill wone the next daye.

14. Soe soone as the daye gave light, they
p̄ceaved that they were hard abourd the Shoare,
in the Bay, that they wore in the daie before, w^ch
made them look out for some place to thrust in
the shipp to save their lives, for towing the long
boat, yt laye sunck at the sterne 2 howers and
more, yett would they not cutt her off, lyving
in hope to save her, so bearing vp helme they
stood in right w^th the shoare, when anon they
p̄ceived two little Islandz to w^ch they made
and there they found (god be thanched) good
Anchoring, where they road vntill the storme
broak, w^ch was the next daye after here they
freed their boat, and had her a shoare to repaire
her, being much torne and spoiled, these
Islandz are too leagues to the westward of

Sachadehoc vpon one of them they went on shoare and found 4. Salvadges and one woman, the Island all rockye and full of pine trees.

15. the storme ended and the wynd came faire for them to goe for Sachadehock, the river whether they were bound to and enioyned to make their Plantation in, soe they weyed Anchor and sett saile, and came to the eastward, and found the Island of Sutquin, and Anchored vnder yt, for the wynd was of the shoare, by w^ch they could not gett into Sachadehoc, yett Capt. Popham w^th the Fly boat gott in.

16. in the morning Capt. Popham sent his Shallop to helpe in the Mary and John, w^ch weyed Anchor, and being calme was soone towed in and Anchored by the Iuifts syde.

17. Capt. Popham in his Pynnace w^th 30. psons and Capt. Gilbert in his long boat w^th 18. psons more went early in the morning from their Shipp into the River Sachadehoc, to view the River, and to search where they might find

a fitt place for their Plantation, they sayled vp into
yᵉ river neere 40 leagues, and found yt to be a
verry gallant River, very deepe and seldome lesse
water, then three fathome when they found lest
where vpon they proceaded no farther but in their
retourne homewards they observed many goodly
Islands therein, and many braunches of other
small rivers falling into yt:

18. they all went a shoare and there made
choise of a place for their Plantation, at the
mouth or entry of the River on the west side, for
the River bendeth yt self towards the Nor-east
and by East) being almost an Island of a good
bignes, being in a province, called by the
Indians Sabino so called of a Sagamo, or chief
Comaunder vnder the graund Bassaba, as they
were a shoare 3. Canoas full of Indians came
to them, but would not come neere, but rowed
away vp the River.

19 they all went ashoare where they
had made choise of their Plantation and there
they had a Sermon delivered vnto them by

their preacher, and after the Sermon the Presidents Comission was read wth the Lawes to be observed and kept, George Popham gent was noiated President, Capt. Ralegh Gilbert, James Davies: Ri: Seymer preacher, Capt: Ric: Davies, Capt Harlow, the same who brought away the Salvadges at this tyme shewed in London, from the River of Canada, were all sworne Assistents and soe they returned back againe.

20. All went to shoare againe, and there began to entrench, and make a Fort, and to buyld a storehouse Contynewing the 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27.

28. Whilst most of the handes laboured hard about the Fort and the Carpenters about the buylding of a small Pynnace, the President overseeing and applying ev'y one to his worke, Capt. Gilbert depted in the Shallop upon a discovery to the Westward and sayled all the daye, by many gallant Islandes the wynd at night Comyng contrary they came to Anchor that night under a headland by the Indians called

Semiamis, the Land exceeding good as fitile as
appeared by the trees growing therein being goodly
and great most Oake and Walnutt wth spatious
passage betweene, and not Rubbish vnder, and
a place most fit to fortifye on being by nature
fortefyed on two side wth a spring of water
under yt.

29. they depted from this Headland Semiamis
in the height of 43½ degrees, and rowed alongst
the shoar to the westward, for that the wynd
was against them, and wch blew so hard, that
they reached no farther then an Island 2
leagues off where whilst they Anchored 2
Canoas passed by them but would not come
neere them.

30. they returned homewardes before the
wynd sayling by many goodly and gallant
Islandes for betwixt the said Headland Semia-
mis and the River of Sachadehoc is a very
great Bay, in the wch there lyeth so many
Islandes and so thicke and neere togither, that
can hardly be discerned the nomber, yet maye

any shipp passe betwixt the greatest parte of them having seldome lesse water then 8. or 10 fathome about them, these Islands are all overgrowne wth woodes as Oake, Walnutts, Pine, Cypruse-trees, Hasell-nutts, Sarsaperilla and Hurts in aboundance only they found no Saxafras at all in the Country, and this night they arrived at the Fort againe.

September. 31. and 1 of September 2. 3 & 4 nothing was done but only for the furtherance, and buyldynge of the Fort and Storehouse to receave a shoare their victualls.

5. About noone there came into the entrance of the River Sachadehoc, and soe vnto the Fort, as our people were at worke, 9 Canoas wth 40 Salvadges in them men women and children and amongst them was Nahanada, and Skidwares, they came vp into the Fort and the President gave them meat and drinck and vsed them exceeding kindly, 2 or 3 howers they remayned there, and then they p'ted Skidwares and another Salvadge staying still wth whome at night, Capt. Gilbert James Davies, and Ellis

Beast went over to the farthest side of the River, whether all the rest had wth drawen them selves, and there remayned wth them all the night and early in the morninge, the Salvadges depted in their Canoas for the River of Pamaquid promising Capt. Gilbert to accompany him in their Canoas to the River of Penobscott, where the Bafsaba dwells.

6 & 7. the busines of the Fort only attended.

8. Capt. Gilbert wth 22 others depted in the Shallop for the River of Penobscot taking wth him divers sorts of Marchandizes to trade wth the Bafsaba but by reason the wynd held easterly being Contrary, yt was 3. daies before he gott into the River of Penobscott.

11. early in the morning they came into the River of Pemaquid there to call Nahanada, and Skidwares to goe along wth them, but being arrived there, they found that they were all gone from thence vnto the River of Penobscot before, wherfore they sett sayle for that River,

and all that day, as likewise the 12. and 13. they sayled and searched to the eastward, yet by noe meanes could find the River, for wch they returned their victualls spent, and the wynd larg and good, and in too dayes arrived againe at the Fort, having had a sight the 15th in the morning of a blasing starr in the Nor-east of them.

The 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. all laboured about the Fort and buylding vp of the Storehouse.

23. Capt. Gilbert accompanied wth 19. others depted in his Shallop to goe for the Head of the River of Sachadehoc, they sayled all this daye, and the 24th the like vntill 6 of the Clock in the after noone, when they landed on the Rivers side where they found a Champion land and very firtile where they remayned all that night.

Caput. 10. The death of Capt. Popham: Capt. Gilbert disposeth of him self for England, when the Companie wold then stay no longer albeit Capt. Davis returned vnto them, with a great supply fro England.

25. in the morning they depted from thence, and sayled vp the River, and came to a flatt low Island where ys a great Cataract or down-

-fall of water, wch runneth by both sides of this Island very shold and swift, In this Island they found great store of grapes both redd & whit, good hopps, as also Chiballs and garlike, they haled their boat wth a strong rope through this down-fall & force & went neere a league further vp, and here they lay all night, and in the first of the night there called certaine Salvages on the further side of the River vnto them in broken English, they answeared them againe and spted long wth them, when towards morning they depted.

26. in the morning there came a Canoa vnto them and in her a Sagamo, and 4. Salvages, some of those wch spoke to them the night before, the Sagamo called his name Sebenoa, and told vs how he was Lord of the River Sachadehoc, they entertayned him freindly, and tooke him into their boat & presented him wth some trifling thinge wch he accepted howbeyt he desired some one of our men to be put into his Canoa as a pawne of his safety, where vpon Capt. Gilbert sent

in a man of his, when p^sently the Canoa rowed away from them w^th all the speed they could make vp the River, they followed w^th the Shallop having great care that the Sagamo should not leape ouer board, the Canoa quickly rowed from them and landed, and the men made to their houses being neere a league on the Land from y^e Rivers side, and Carried our man w^th them, the Shallop making good waye at length came to another downefall w^ch was so shallowe and soe swift, that by no meanes they could passe any further for w^ch Capt. Gilbert w^th 9 others landed, and tooke their fare, the Saluadge Sagamo w^th them, and went in search after those other Saluages, whose howses the Sagamo told Capt. Gilbert were not farr off and after a good tedious march, they came indeed at length vnto those Salvage howses, wheare they found neere 50. able men very strong and tall, such as their like before they had not seene, all newly painted and armed w^th their bowes and arrowes, howbeyt after that the Sagamo had talked w^th them they deliuered back againe the man, and vsed all the rest very freindly, as did ours the like by them, who

shewed them their Comodities of beade knives and some Copper, of w^ch they seemed very fownd, and by wayse of trade made shew that they would come downe to the boat and there bring such thinge as they had to exchaunge them for ours, soe Capt. Gilbert depted from them, and w^th in half an howre after he had gotten to his boat there came 3. Canoas down vnto them, and in them some 16. Saluages, and brought w^th them some Tobacco and certayne small Skynes w^ch were of noe valow, w^ch Capt. Gilbert perceaving, and that they had nothing ells where w^ch to trade, he caused all his men to come aboard, and as he would have putt from the shoare, the Saluages perceiving soe much, subtilely devised how they might put out the fier in the Shallop by w^ch meanes they sawe they should be free from the danger of our mens pieces, and to performe the same, One of the Saluages came into the Shallop, and taking the fier brand w^ch one of our Company held in his hand thereby to light the matches, as if he would light a pipe of Tobacco, as sone as he had gotten yt into his hand he presently threw yt into the water, and

leapt out of the Shallop, Capt. Gilbert seeing that suddenly Comaunded his men to betake them to their musketts & the Targettiers too, from the head of the boat, and bad one of his men before w^th his Targett on his arme, to steppe on the shore for more fier, the Salvages resisted him and would not suffer him to take any, and some others holding fast the boat roape that the Shallop could not putt off Capt. Gilbert caused the musquettiers to present their peece, the w^ch the Salvages seeing, presently let go the boat roap and betooke them to their bowes and arrowes; and ran into the bushes nocking their arrowes, but did not shoot neither did ours at them, so the Shallop departed from them to the further side of the River where one of the Canoas came vnto them, and would have excused the fault of the others, Capt. Gilbert made shew as if he were still freinds and entertayned them kindlye and soe left them, returning to the place where he had lodged the night before, and there came to an Anchor for that night, the head of this River standeth in 45. degrees & odd mynutte, vpon the Continent they found aboundaunce of spruse

trees such as are able to maast the greatest ship his Ma^tie hath, and many other trees Oke, Wallnutt Pine-aple fish aboundaunce, great store of grapes, hoppes and Chiballs; also they found certaine Codds in w^ch they supposed the Cotton woull to grow, and also upon the banck^s many sheels of pearle.

27. here they sett up a Crosse, and then returned homeward in the way seeking the By-river of some note called Sabanoa, this daye and the next they sought yt, when the weather turned fowle, and full of fog and raine, they made all haste to the Fort before w^ch the 29. they arrived.

30. and 1. and 2. of October all busye about the Fort. October.

3. there came a Canoa, unto some of the people of the Fort, as they were fishing on the sand, in w^ch was Skidwares who badd them tell their President, that Nahanada w^th the Bashabaes beother and others were on the further side of the River, and the next daie would come & visitt him.

4. there came 2 Canoas to the Port, in wch were Nahanada, and his wife, and Skidwares, and the Bashabaes brother, and one other called Amenquin a Sagamo, all whom the President feasted, and entertayned wth all kindnes, both that day and the next, wch being Sondaye the President carried them to the place of publike prayers, wch they were at both morning and evening, attending yt wth great reverence & silence.

6. the Salvadges depted all except Amenquin the Sagamo who would needes staye amongst our people a longer tyme, upon the depture of the others, the President gave vnto every one of them Copper beades or Knives wch contented them not a little as also delivered a president vnto the Bashabaes brother, and another for his wife, giving him to vnderstand that he would come vnto his Court in the River of Penobscot, and see him very shortly bringing many such like of his Country Comodityes wth him.

Yo^r^ maje please to vnderstand how whilst this busines, was thus followed here soone after their first arrivall, that had dispatcht away Capt. Ro: Davies in y^e^ Mary and John to advertise of their safe arrivall and forwardnes of their Plantation w^th^in this River of Sachadehoc, w^th^ Lres to the Lord chief Justice, ymportunynge a supply for the most necessary wantes to the subsisting of a Colony to be sent vnto them betymes the next yeare.

After Capt. Davies depture they fully finished the Fort trencht and fortefied yt w^th^ 12 piecs of Ordinaunce, and built 50 howses therein, besides a Church and a Storehowse, and the Carpenters framed a pretty Pynnace of about some 50 tonne, w^ch^ they called the Virginia, the chief Shipwright being one Digby of London.

Many discoveries likewise had ben made, both to the Mayne and vnto the neighbour Rivers, and the frontier Nations fully discovered by the diligence of Capt. Gilbert, had not the wynter proved soe extreame vnseasonable & frosty

for yt being in the yeare 1607. when the extraor-
-dinary frost was felt in most part of Europe
yt was here likewise as vehement, by wch noe
boat could stir vpon any busines, howbeyt
as tyme and occasyon gave leave, there was
nothing omitted, wch could ad vnto the benefitt
or knowledg of the Planters, for which when Capt.
Davies arrived there in the yeare following sett
out from Topsam the Port Towne of Exciter wth
a shipp laden full of Victualls, armes, Instru-
mentz and Tooles &c albeyt he found Mr George
Popham the President and some other dead, yet
he found all things in good forwardnes, and many
kinde of furrs obteyned from the Indians by way
of Trade good store of Sarsaparilla gathered and
the new Pynnace all finished but by reason
that Capt. Gilbert, receiued Lres that his
brother was newly dead and a faire portion
of Land fallen vnto his share, wch required
his repaier home, and no Mynes discovered,
nor hope therof, being the Mayne intended
benefitt expected to vphold the Charg of this
Plantacon, and the feare that all other wynters
would prove like this first, the Company by no

meanes would stay any longer in the Country
especyally Capt: Gilbert being to leave them, and
Mr. Popham as aforesaid dead, wherefore they all
ymbarqued in this new arrived Shipp and in
the new Pynnace the Virginia, and sett saile
for England. And this was the end of that
Northeren Colony vppon the River Sachadehoc.

Finis.

[Royal MS. Mus. Brit. 18. A. XI. John Rolfe's relation of the State of Virginia]

A true relation of
y^e State of
Virginia.

To the Kings most sacred
Ma^tie

May it please your Highnes

There have been of late divulged many Im-
-pressions indicallie and truly penned, partly
to take away the Ignominie scandalls and
maledictions wherew^th this Action hath been branded:
and partlie to satisfie all (especially the best)
w^th the mann^r of the late proceedings, and the
prosperitie likely to ensue. How happily & plen-
-teously the good Blessinge of God haue fallen
vpon the people and Colony since the last
Impression faithfully written by a gent of good
meritt M^r Ralph Hamor (some tyme an actuall
member in the Plantation, even then departing

when the foundacon and ground worke was new laid of their now thrift and happines) of the earthie and worldly man is scarcely believed, but of heavenlier mindes they are most easilie discerned, for they daily attend and marke how those blessinges (though sometymes restrayned for a tyme) in the end are powred vpon the servantes of the Lord. Shall yo^r Matie w^th Pietie and Pittie, w^th Pietie being zealous for Godes glory, and w^th Pittie (mourning the defectes) vouchsafe to reade thus much of the estate of this Colony, as it remained in May last when S^r Thomas Dale left the same, I shall deeme myself most happie in yo^r gracious acceptance and most readilie offer to yo^r approved Judgement, whether this Cause so much despised and disgraced doe not wrongfully suffer many Imputacons.

First to meete w^th an Obiection comonly vsed amongst many men, who search Truthes no farther then by comon reportes namely, How is it posible Virginia can now be so good? so fertile a Countrey so plentifullie stored w^th

food & other Comodities? Is it not the same still it was when men pined wth famine? Can the Earth now bring forth such a plentifull increase, Were there not Governors men and meanes to have wrought this heretofore? and can it now on the suddaine be so fruitfull? Surely say they, these are rather baytes to catch & intrapp more men into woe & intrapp more men into woe & miserie, then otherwise can be imagined. These wth many as frivolous I have heard instigated, and even reproachfullie spoken against Virginia. To answeare whom (the most pte of them incredulous Wrldlings such as believe not vnles they feele the goodnes of the Lord sencible to touch them) though it be not much materiall, yet let them know, Tis true, Virginia is the same it was, I meane for the goodnes of the Scate, and fertilenes of the Land, and will no doubt so contynue to the Wrlds end. A Countrey as worthy good report, as can be declared by the pen of the best Writer, A Countrey spacious and wide, capable of many hundred thousands of Inhabitants. For the Soyle most fertill to plant in, For Ayre fresh and temperate somewhat

hotter in sommer, and not altogether so cold in winter as in England, yet so agreable it is to o^r Constitucons, that now tis more rare to heare of a mans death then in England amongst so many people as are there resident, For water most wholesome and verie plentifull. And for fayre navigable Riveis and good harbo^rs no Countrey in Christendom in so small a Circuite so well stored, For matter fitt for Buildinge fortificacons, and for building of Shipping w^th everie thing thereto apperteyning. I may boldly avouch scarce anie or no Countrey knowne to man of it self more abowndantly furnished. Theis thinge (may some say) are of great Consequence toward the setling of a Plantation. But where are the Beastz and Cattle to feede and cloth the people, I confesse this is a mayne Want: yet some there are already, as Neate Cattle, Horses Mares and Goates, w^ch are carefullie preserved for increase. The nomber whereof hereafter shalbe sett downe in a pticuler not by themselves, There are also great store of Hogge both wild and tame, and poultrie great plentie, w^ch every man if they will themselves may keepe.

The Horses and Oxen are ymployed to the Carts, and to plough ground for English Corne.

But the greatest want of all is least thought on, and that is good & sufficient men, aswell of Birth & qualitie to comaund. Soldiers to march discover, and defend the Countrey from Invasions, as also Artificers, Laborers, and Husbandmen, wth whom were the Colony well provided, then might tryall be made, what lyeth hidden in the Wombe of the ground, the Land might yearelie abound wth Corne & other provisions for mans sustenance, Buildinge fortificacons and Shipping might be reared wrought & framed. Comodities of divers kinds might be yearely reaped & sought after, and many things (Gods blessinge contynuing) might come wth ease to establish a firme and ffect common Weale. But to come againe to the matter from wch I have a little straied & to give a more full answeare to the obiectons. May yo^{u} please to take notice, That the beginning of this Plantation was governed by a President & Councell Aristocratically, The President yearelie chosen out of the Councell wch consisted of twelve ffsons. This Government lasted abone two yeares, In wch tyme such Envie dissentions and Jarrs were daily towne

amongst them, that they choaked the seedz, and blasted the fruitz of all mens Labo^rs. If one were well disposed and gave good advisement to proceed in the busines. Others out of the malice of their hearts would contradict interdict w^th stand and dash all. Some rung out and sent home too loud praises of the riches & fertilenes of the Countrey, before they assayed to plant to reape or search the same, Others said nothing, nor did any thing thereunto, All would be Keisars, none inferio^r to other. Some drew forward, more backward. The vulgar sort looked for supplie out of England, neglected husbandry, Some wrote home there was no want of food yet sought for none. Others that would have sought could not be sufferred. In w^ch Confusion much Confusion yearelie befell them, and in this Government happened all the miserie. Afterward a more absolute Government was graunted Monarchically, wherein it still contynueth. And although for some few yeares it stood at a stay, especially in the manuring & tilling of ground, yet men spent not their tyme idely nor unprofitablie. For they were daily employed in pallazadoing and building of Townes

impaling grounds and other needfull businesses wch is now both beneficiall to keepe the Cattle from ranging, and preserveth the Corne safe from their spoile: Being thus fitted and prepared to sow Corne, and to plant other seeds & fruits in all the places of our habitacons, one thing notwthstanding much troubled our Governo, namely, Enmitie wth the Indians: For howsoever we could well defend our selves, Townes and Seates from any assaults of the Natives, yet our Cattle and Corne lay too open to their Courtesies, and to subiect to their mercies: Whereupon a Peace was concluded, wch still contynueth so firme that or people yearely plant and reape quietly, and travell in the woods a fowling and a hunting as freely and securely from feare of danger or Treccherie as in England. The great Blessings of God have followed this Peace, and it next under him hath breedd our plentie Everie man sitting under his Figtree in safetie, gathering & reaping the fruits of their labors wch much ioy and Comfort. But a question may be demaunded what these fruits are. For such as the Countrey affordeth naturally (for variety and goodnes comparable to the best in Christendom, growing wild as they doe; I pass

them over other discourses having largely manifested them to the view of the World. But for the peoples present Labors They have Indian Wheate, called Mays in the West Indies, Pease and Beanes, English Wheate, Pease, Barley, Turnips, Cabbages, Pumpions West Indian and others. Carretts, Parsnips and such like, Besides hearbs and Flowers all of our English seede, both for pleasure and for the kitchin, so good so fruitful so pleasant and profitable, as the best made ground in England can yeild And that yr Matie may know what two mens Labors with the Spade and Shelve onely can manure in one yeare Fiftie pounds in money was offerred for their croppe, wch they refused to take, For Hempe and Flax none better in England or Holland. Silkewormes some of their Labors and tasty of other good and vendible Comodities were now brought home Likewise Tobacco (though an esteemed weed) very comodious wch there thriveth so well, that no doubt but after a little more triall and experience in the curing thereof, it will compare with the best in the West Indies. For fish, fowle deere and other Beaste, reporte and Writinge have rather been too sparing then prodigall About two yeares

since Sr Thomas Dale (whose worth and name in con-
-cluding this Race, and managing thaffairs of this
Colony will out-last the standing of this Plantation)
found out two seasons in the yeare to catch fish,
namely the Spring and the Fall. He himself took
no small paines in the tryall, and at one hale
wth a seyne caught five thousand three hundred of
them as bigg as Codd. The least of the residue a Kind
of Salmon Trout two foote long yet durst he not
adventure on the mayne Skull for breaking his
Nett. Likewise two men wth axes and such like
weapons have taken and killed neere the Shoare
& brought home fortie as great as Codd in two or
three howers space. So that now there is not so
great plentie of Victualls in anie one of the fore-
-named Kind yearelie, wth small paines to be gotten
in any pte of England, amongst so few people as
are there resident. And whereas heretofore we were
constrayned yearelie to goe to the Indians and
intreate them to sell us Corne wch made them
esteeme verie basely of us, Now the case is altered,
they seeke to us, come to our Townes, sell their skins
from their shoulders, wch is their best garments
to buy Corne, yea some of their pettie Kings have

sic

this last yeare borrowed 4 or 500 bushells of wheate, for payment whereof this harvest they have mort-gaged their whole Countries some of them not much less in quantitie then a Shire in England By this meanes plentie and prosperitie dwelleth amongst them and the feare and danger of famine is cleane taken away wherewth the Action hath a long tyme sufferred invirious defamacons

Now that yor Highnes may wth the more ease understand in what condicon the Colony standeth I have briefely sett downe the mannr of all mens severall Imployments the number of them and the severall places of their abode, wch places or Seates are all our owne ground not so much by Conquest, wch the Indians hold a iust and lawfull title, but purchased of them freely, and they verie willingly selling it.

The places wch are now possessed and inhabited are sixe.

1. Henrico & the Lynitte.
2. Bermuda Nether } Hundreds
3. West & Sherley }
4. James Towne.
5. Kequoughtan.
6. Dales = Gift.

} members belonging to the Bermuda Towne a place so called there by reason of the Strength of the Situacon were it indifferently fortified.

The generall mayne bodie of the Planters are devided into

1. Officers.
2. Laborers.
3. Farmors.

The Officers have the charge and care aswell over the Farms[rs] as Labrers gen[d]allie that they watch and ward for their p[r]servacons and that both the one and the others Busines may be daily followed to the p[r]formance of those Imployments w[ch] from the one are required and the other by Covenint are bound vnto. These officors are bound to maintayne themselves and families w[th] Food and Rayment by their owne and their P[r]vaunt Industrie.

The Laborers are of two sortes Some imployed onely in the generall worke, who are fedd and clothed out of the Store, Others specially Artificers, as Smiths, Carpenters, Shoemakers, Taylors, Tanners, & doe worke in their professions for the Colony, and maintayne themselves w^th^ food and apparrell, having tyme lymitted them to till and manure their ground,

The Farmors live at most ease, yet by their good endevo^rs^ bring yearelie much plentie to the plantacon, they are bound by Covenn^t^ both for themselves and servaunt^s^ to maintayne yo^r^ Ma^tie^ right and title in that Kingdome, against all forcigne and domesticque Enemies. To watch and ward in the Townes where they are resident, To doe 31 dayes service for the Colony when they shalbe called thereunto yet not at all tymes, but when their owne busines can best spare them. To maintayne themselves and families w^th^ food and Rayment, and every Farmor to pay yearely vnto the Magazin for himself & everie man servant two barrells and a half a piece of their best Indian Wheate, w^ch^ amounteth to twelve

Bushells and a half of English measure. Thus briefely have I sett downe every mans ꝑticuler Imployment and manner of living. Albeit, least the people, who generallie are bent to covett after gaine, especiallie having tasted of the sweet of their Labo^rs should spend too much of their tyme and Labo^r in planting Tobacco knowne to them to be verie vendible in England, and so neglect their tillage of Corne, and fall into want thereof. It is ꝓvided for by the ꝓvidence of S^r Thomas Dale that no Farmo^r or other who must maintayne themselves shall plant any Tobacco, unles he shall yearely manure sett and maintayne for himself and everie man servant two acres of ground w^th Corne w^ch doing they may plant as much Tobacco as they will els all their Tobacco shalbe forfeite to the Colony. By w^ch meanes the — Magazin shall yearelie be sure to receave their Rent of Corne, to maintayne those who are fedd thereout being but a few and manie others if need be. They themselves wilbe well stored to keepe their families w^th overplus and reape Tobacco enough to buy Clothes, and such other necessaries as are needfull for themselves and

howshold: For an easie Laborer will keepe and tend two acres of Corne, and cure good store of Tobacco, being yet the principall Comodities the Colony for the present yeildeth. For wch as for other comodities the Councell and Company for Virginia have already sent a Ship thether furnished wth all manner of clothing, howshold stuff and such necessaries to establish a Magazin there, wch the people shall buy at easie rates for their comodities, they selling them at such prices that the Adventurers may be no losers This Magazin shalbe yearelie supplied to furnish them if they will endevour by their labor to maintayne it wch wilbe much beneficiall to the Planters & Adventurers by interchanging their comodities and will add much encouragemt to them & others to p'sever and follow the Action wth a constant resolucon to vphold the same.

The people wch inhabite the said 6 sev'all places are disposed as followeth.

At Henrico and the p'incts (wch is seated on the Northside the River 90 odd myles from the

mouth thereof, and wthin 15 or 16 myles of the Falls, or head of that River, being oR furthest habitacon wthin the Land) are 38 Men and Boyes whereof 22 are Farmors, the rest Officers and others, All whom maintayne themselves wth food and apparell Of this Towne one Capten Smaley hath the Comaund in the absence of Capten James Davis, Mr. Wm Wickham minister there who in his life and doctrine give good examples & godly Instruccons to the people.

At Bermuda Nether Hundred (seated on the South side the River crossing it, and going by land, 5 myles lower then Henrico by water ten) are 119. wch Seate conteyneth a good circuite of ground the River winding round so that a pale running cross a neck of land from one ffte of the River to the other, maketh it a Peninsula. The howses and dwellinge of the people are sette round about by the River, and all along the pale so farr distant one from the other that upon anie Alarme they can succour and second the one the other: These people are incoyned by a Charter (being incorporated to the Bermuda Towne wch

is made a Corporacon) to effect and p̄forme such duties and services whereunto they are bound for a certaine tyme, and then to have their freedome. This Corporacon admitts no Farmors, unles they procure of the Governo^r some of the Colony men to be their servants, for whom (being no members of the Corporacon) they are to pay rent Corne as other Farmo^rs. Of this kind there are about 17 others also comprehended in the said nomber of 119 there are resident who labo^r gen^d allie for the Colony, amongst whom some make Pitch and Tarr, Pbashes Charcoale and other Weeks, and are mayntayned by the Magazin: but are not of the Corporacon. At this place (for the most p̄te) liveth Capten Yeardly Deputy Marshall & Deputie Governo^r Mr. Alexander Whittaker (sonne to that reverend and famous devine Dr. Whitaker) a good devine hath the ministeriall charge there.

At West & Sherley Hundred (seated on the North side the River lower then the Bermuda 3 or 4 miles) are 25 comaunded by Capten Maddeson, who are imployed onely in

planting) and curing) Tobacco, wth the profitt thereof to cloth themselves and all those who labour about the generall Busines.

At James Towne (seated on the North side of the River from West & Sherley Hundred lower downe about 37 myles) are 50 under the Comaund of Lieutenint Sharpe in the absence of Capten Francis West Esqr. brother to the right hoble the Lo. Lawarre, whereof 31 are Farmors, All theis maintayne themselves wth food and Rayment Mr. Richard Buck minister there a verie good preacher.

At Kequoughtan (being not farr from the mouth of the River 37 myles below James Towne on the same side are 20, whereof 11 are Farmors, All these also mayntayne themselves as the former, Capten George West Comaunder, Mr. Wm. Mayo Minister there.

At Dales-Gift (being upon the Sea neere unto Cape Charles, about 30 myles from Kequoughtan are 17 under the Comaund of

one Lieutennt Leadock all these are fedd and mayntayned by the Colony, Their Labor is to make Salt and catch Fish, at the two seasons aforementioned.

So the nomber of Officers and Laborers are 205. The Farmors 81. besides women and children in everie place some, wch in all amounteth to 351 ffsons a small nomber to advaunce so great a Worke.

Their seu'all places are not weakly manned, as capable of no greater nomber (for they will maintayne many 100s more: But because no one can be forsaken wthout losse and detrimt to all. If then so few people thus united ordered and governed doe live so happily everie one ffaking of the others Labor can keepe in possession so much ground as will feed a farr greater nomber in the same or better condicon And seeing too too many poore Farmors in England worke all the yeare, rising early & going to bed late, live penuriously, and much adoe to pay their Landlords Rent, besides a daily barking and

caring) to feed themselves and families. What happines might they enioy in Virginia? were men sencible of theis thinge, where they may haue ground for nothing more then they can maintre: reape more fruite and profitt w^th half the labo^r, void of many cares and vexacons, and for their Rent, a matter of small or no moment, I leaue to yo^r singular Iudgement and Consideracon nothing doubting but Hee (who by his infinite goodnes w^th so small meanes hath setled these poore and weake beginnge so happily) will animate, stirr vp and encourage manie others cheerefully to vndertake this work and will assuredly add to daily strength to vphold & maintayne what he hath already begun.

Seeing then this languishing Action is now brought to this forwardnes and strength, no ffon but is provided for either by their owne or others labo^rs to subsist themselves for food, and to be able to rayse Comodities for clothing and other neccssaries. Envy it self poysoned w^th the venom of Aspes cannot wound it.

Now to drawe to a Conclusion of this my poore Oblacon. I would crave yor Highnes patience a little longer, and that yo^{u} would turne yor heart to a more heavenly meditacon, wherein much ioy and comfort is to be reaped and found, of all such as shall truly sincerely and vnfeynedly seeke to advaunce the hono^{r} of God, and to propagate his Gospell. There is no small hope by pietie clemencie Curtesie and civill demeano^{r} (by w^{ch} meanes some are wonne to vs alreadie) to convert and bring to the knowledge and true worship of Jesus Christ 1000^{s} of poore wretched and vnbeleiving people; on whose faces a good Christian cannot looke wthout sorrow pittie and Comiseracon, seing they beare the Image of or heavenlie creato^{r} and we and they come from one and the same mould, especially we knowing that they meerely through ignorance of God and Christ doe run headlong, yea w^{ch} ioy into destruccon and perpetuall damnacon. For w^{ch} Knowledge we are the more bound and indebted to Almightie God (for what were we before the Gospell of Christ shined amongst vs) and cannot better expresse our duties and thankfulnes

for so great mercies then by vsing such meanes
to them, as it pleased him to lend vnto others to
bring o^r forefathers and vs into the Waies of
Truth. It is much to be mourned and lamented
how lightlie the worke of God are now a dayes
gen^rallie regarded, and lefs sought after But the
worke of the World as though they were eternall
hungred for and thirsted after w^th insatiable
greedines. But should we well consider, examine
and search into our selves, what we were and
now are, there can be no heart (if not hardned
as the Nether millstone) but would even breake
it self to pieces and distribute to manie poore
soules some pte thereof to purge them from
their lees of synne, and to settle them in the
right pathes of holines and righteousnes to
serve the King of Heaven. By w^ch meanes and
Gods holy assistance no doubt they will soone
be brought to abandon their old superstic̃ons
and Idolatries, wherein they have been nursed
and trayned from their Infancies and o^r
greatest adversaries shall not taunt vs w^th
this reproach Whom of you have yo^u wonne
to Christianitie? what a Crowne of glorie shalbe

sett vpon their heade, who shall faithfullie labo^r
herein, I leaue to the enioying of them, who
shall endeavour vnfeynedlie to meritt the same.
Finally as Caleb and Josuah in the verie heate
of grudgings Murmurings and assemblies of
the Children of Israell stood stoutlie for the
Lorde Cause, comending the goodnes of the land
they discouered to the faces of their Opposo^rs and
the easines to obtaine it even to the spill of their
lives. So many right ho^ble and worthy perso-
nages both here and in Virginia (when generallie
the most pte w^th drew themselves, that the Action
was almost struck downe in forgetfulnes) haue
mightilie vpheld this Christian Cause, for God,
even our owne God did helpe them, For neither
will Reports, nor Slanderers nor murmurings
nor Backslidings of others nor any disaster did
once dismay or hinder them from vpholding
there of w^th their good Reports Incouragements
and meanes yearelie sent to the Planters to
nourish life and Being in this zealous Worke,
I beseech God to raise vp many more such, so
zealous for Godes glory to forward the same, we
haue tasted of some fruits thereof. There are no

great or strong Castles, nor men like the Sonnes of Anack to hinder o^r quiet possession of that Land Gods hand hath been mightie in the pres^d vacon thereof hitherto, What need we then to feare but to goe vp at once as a peculiar people, — marked and chosen by the Finger of God, to possess it, for undoubtedly he is w^th vs; And as for Murmurers Slaunderers & Backsliders a due porcon shalbe given them for their reward. So the Blessings of Caleb and Joshuah shall fall vpon all those that constantly p̄severe to the end. Thus craving yo^r gracious pardon for my rude boldnes, beseeching God to send yo^u the fulnes of his Blessings in this World, and in the World to come I rest.

Your Highnes most
faithfull & loyall
Subiect
John Rolf.

The nomber of Neate Cattle,
Horses & Goates which
were alive in Virginia
at Sr. Thomas Dale
his departure
thence. /

Cowes
Heifers } 83
Cow Calues

Steeres ____ 41
Bulles ____ 20

} in all } 144.

Memorand: 20 of the Cowes were great wth calfe at his departure,

Horses ____ 3
Mares ____ 3

} in all } 6.

Goates
Kidds } male & female in all } 216.

Hoggs { wild & tame } not to be nombred

Poultry great plentie /

Burleigh Papers
MS. Lansdown.
British Museum
Vol. XXXVII. art. 72

Articles set downe by the Comitties appointed for the dealingz in the Vyadgz to America vnder the Conduction of Cayten Carleill the nynth of Maye 1583.

Pointes set downe by the Comitties appointed in the behalfe of the Compy to conferre wt Mr Carliell vpon his entended Discouerie and attempt into the Northerlie parte of America.

The Comitties
Mr Aldn Harte
Mr Spencer
Mr Hoddesdon
Mr W. Borrough
Mr Towerson
Mr Hanye
Mr Hapers
Mr Maye
Mr J. Castlyn
Mr Leake.

First the Comitties are well psuaded that the Countrey whervnto this action pretendeth ys verie fruitefull, habited wt a sauadge people of a milde and tractable disposition And that of all other places wch are vnfrequented at this daie yt is the onlie most fittest and most comodious for vs to entermeddle wt all.

The convenientest manr of attemptinge this enterpride, is thought to be thus That there shoulde be one houndred men conveyed thither to remaine there one whole yere whoe wt freindelie entreatie of the people maie enter into better knowledge of the pticuler estate of the Countrey And thereby gather

RPJCB

2. what Comodities maie here after or pntly be looked for.

The charge to transporte these houndred men, to victuall them, and to furnish them of munition and other needfull thinges will not be lesse then fower thowsande pounds One thowsande pounds whereof hath ben verie readelie offered by the Citie of Bristoll the residew beinge three thowsande pounds remaineth to be furnished by this citty of London.

The Comitties thinke it convenient that before they departe wt their monney, a privilege shold be procured by Mr Carleill from her Ma:tie to the behoofe of the first adventurers. And yet meaninge this wt all that before her Ma:tie shalbe moved therein, ech man shall subscribe his owne name and sowme of money wch he will adventure in a booke, to thende that yt maie first be assuredly knowen how the pnt charge shall be furnished.

The said priuilege to conteine in effect thus much as hereafter followeth

That it maie please her Ma^tie to graunte to the first adventurers, th'one halfe of all such Landes, Territories, Townes, Mynes of golde and silver and other metalls whatsoeu that shalbe fownde gotten obtained and conquered by this discouerie yeldinge to her Ma.^tie one fifte ꝑte of all the golde and silver as shall happen to be had owte of any Mynes that so shalbe fownde.

That those ꝑties w^ch doe adventure themselues ꝑsonallie in this ꝑsente discouerie shall haue th'other halfe of all the Landes, Territories, Townes, Mynes of gold and silu^r and other Metalles, yeldinge to her Ma^tie the fifte parte of the Mynes as, th'adventurers doe, the same to be distributed by the Generall at his discretion.

Also that all trade of Mchandize that shalbe vsed to and from those ꝑtes w^ch

4. by this discouerie shalbe founde owte shall
appteine only to th'adventurers w^ch first shall
disburce their monney for this discouerie wth
pphibition to all other her Mat^ie subiectz, and
other Mchantz to deale in the said partes
w^thowte the consent of the first adventurers
vpon paine of Lose of Ship and goodes and
punishm^t of their pssonnes that so shall
adventure by Imprisonnem^t at the Companies
pleasure.

That all pssonnes w^ch hereafter shall
adventure in this discouerie shalbe such
only as firste doe disburce their monney
for the same And they not to adventure
hereafter any further somme but ratably
accordinge to the pporcion of their first
adventure.

Also the proffitte w^ch by this discouerie
shalbe attained vnto, ether by Land w^ch
maie be conquered or otherwise gotten As
also all such proffitte w^ch by this discouerie
shalbe obtained by Mynes or otherwise

That

that eck one shall haue his parte rate and 5.
rate likewise accordinge to the proportion of
their first adventure and not otherwise.

That in the patent wch is to be obtained be
graunted that all her Mate subiectes maie
transporte themselues thither that shalbe
contente to goe. And that the patentee maie
ship thither from tyme to tyme somanie
and such psons men women & children as
they shall thinck meete And the same
psons to inhabite or remaine there at
their pleasure any Lawe to the contrarie
notwtstandinge

Yt yis meete that order be taken that noe
pson nor psonnes goe over but such as
shalbe bounde to staie and enhabite there
10 yeres at the least except such as goe to
mdchandize. And therefore meete for non
to goe over wtout Licence of the patentees
first obtained.

That it shall not be lawfull for any of

6. her Ma^tie subiectt, or any other to enhabite or trafficq^t w^thin 200 leagues any Waie of the place where the Generall shall haue first settled his beinge or residence.

Burleigh Papers
MS. Lansdown
British Museum
Vol. C. art. 14

A Discourse vpon ye Voyage to yt hethermoste partes of America wrytten by Capten Carleill to ye Citizens of London.

When the Goldesmyth desireth to fynde the certen goodnes of a peece of golde, which is newlye offred vnto hym, he prtlie bringeth the same to the Toutchstone, where by comparing the shewe or toutch of this newe peece wth the toutch or shewe of that wch he knoweth of olde he foorthwth is able to Judge what the valewe is of that wch is newlie offred vnto hym. After the Example whereof I haue thought it good to make some brief repitticon of the pticuler estate of many other forraine voiadge and trades alreadie frequented and knowne vnto vs, whereby yow maye be the better able to conceave and Judge what certon likelihood of good there is to be expected in the voiadge wch is prentlie recomended to yor knowledge and resolution.

2. And first to lay downe that of Mosconia whose begynnyng is yet in the remembraunce of many. Yt is well knowne that what by the chardge of the first discouerie, and by the great gyftes bestowed on the Emperor and his Nobilitie togeather with the lewde dealing of some their Factors who thought them selves saulf yenough from orderlie punishement it cost the Companie above fowrescowre thowsand Poundz before it could be brought to any proffitable reckonyng. And nowe that after so longe a spacience and so greate a burden of expence the same began to frame vnto some good course and comoditie, yt falleth to verie ticklishe tearmes and to as slender likelyhood of any further goodnes as any other trade that maybe named. For first the Estate of those Countries and the Emperors dealingz are thingz more fickle then are by everie bodie vnderstood. Nexte the Dutchmen are there so crepte in as they daily augment

their trade thether which maye well conferme that vncertentie of the Emperors disposition to kepe promise with our nation. Thirdlie the qualitie of the voiadge suche as it maye not be performed but once the yere. Fowrthlie the charge of all Ambassadours betweene that Prince and her Ma^tie are alwaies borne by the Mchaunte stock. And lastlie the daunger of the King of Denmarck who besyde that pittie he is like to enforce a tribute on vs, hath likewise an advauntage vpon our Shipping in their voiadge either home-ward or outward whensoever he listeth to take the opportunitie

The badd dealinge of the Esterlinge are sufficientlie knowne to be suche towarde our mchaunte of that trade as they do not only offer them many Iniuries over-long to be written but do seeke all the meanes they cann to deprive them wholie of their occupieing that waie and to the same purpose haue of late cleane debarred them their accustomed and auncient privi-ledges in all their great Townes.

4. The traffick into Turquie besyde that by some it is thought a hard poynte to have somuch familiaritie w^th the professed and obstinate Enemy of Christ. It is likewise a voiadge w^ch cannot be made but at the devotion and as it were in the daunger of many States who for sondrie respectes are apte to quarrell w^th vs vpon sudden occasions. And the presents to be geven awaie in Turquie this yere cost little lesse then Two thowsand Pounde.

As for the Trades into all the partes of Italie It maye easelie be considered by everie one of Judgement that the same standeth in the like tearmes touching the passedge as that of Turquie, and that many times our shipps being taken in the waie by the Gallies of Barbarye our poore Marryners after the losse of their goode and travaile are sett at such excessive rawnsomes before they can be freed from their slaverie as for the most pte they are no waie able to discharge as for example at this instant there are some prisoners poore ordinarie marryners

for

for whose realesing there must be paid ij^{c} Ducates 5.
the man for some iij^{c} yea iiij or v^{c} Ducatz the
man for some of them. And howe enviouslie they
do alreadie oppose them selves against our
frequenting into their partes maye appeare by
the late customes w^{ch} they haue Imposed aswell
vpon our englishe m^{d} chaundize w^{ch} wee bring
them as also vpon suche their m^{d} chaundize w^{ch}
wee fetch from them.

The trade into Barbary groweth likewise to
worse tearmes then before times, and when it
was at the best our m^{d} chaunts haue ben in
daunger of all their goodz they had there whensoeu
it happened the king to die. For vntill a newe
were chosen the libertie of all disordered ffons
is suche as they spoile and wronge whome
they liste wthout any redresse at all.

Touching Graigne and Portugale w^{ch} whom
wee haue verie great trade and muche the
greater by meanes of their venting a good
parte of our wares into their Indies. As
also of the prouision they haue from the

6.

same wherw^ch are made many of our retournes from them agayne. It falleth out that twise the yere ordinerily wee sende our Fleetes into those partes So that whensoev^r the king of Spaigne listeth to take the opportunitie he maye at theis seasons deprive vs not only of a great nomber of our verie good Shippes but also of o^r hounestest and ablest sorte of marryn^rs that are to be fownde in our whole realme agayne w^ch is a matter of no smale consequence For it is to be noted that when he shall take a quarrell in hand though it be but his owne ꝑticulerly, yet hath he the meanes to putt in hazard aswell those our shippinge w^ch are in his owne Countries of Spaigne and Portugale as also all our others w^ch shalbe bound to any the partes of all Italye or of Turquie either. And further whosoev^r he be that is but so meanely affected in Religion as of neccessitie becometh everie ordinarie man and good Christian to be cannot but be agreeved in his harte to consider that his Children and

Pintes whome he desireth to haue well brought 7.
vpp are in theis trades of Spaigne and
Portugale and all Italy forced to deny their
owne profession and made to acquaynte
themselves w^th that w^ch the Parents and M^rs
do vtterlie denie and refuse yea w^ch many
of them do in their owne hartes abhorr as
a detestable and most wicked doctrine.

But who shall loke into the qualitie of
this voiadge beeing directed to the latitude
of 40. degrees or thereabouts of that hether-
-most partes of America shall fynde it
hath as many poynctes of goode moments
belonging vnto it as maye almost be wished
for. At first it is to be vnderstood that it
is not any long course for that it maye
be performed to and fro in fower Monethes
after the first discouerie thereof. Secondlie
that one wynde suffiseth to make the
passedge whereas most of yo^r other voiadge
of like length are subiecte to three or fower
seu^rall wyndes. Thirdly that it is to be
performed at all times of the yere. Fourthlie

8. that the passadge is vpon the highe sea wherby yo^u are not bownde to the knowledge of daungers on any other coast more then of that Countrey and of ours here at hoame. Fiftly that those partes of England and Ireland w^ch lye aptest for the proceeding owteward^s and homeward^s vpon this voiadge are verie well stored of goodly harboroughes. Sixtly that it is to be accompted of no daunger at all as touching the power of any forraine Prince or State when it is compared w^th any the best of all thother voiadge before recited.

And to the godlie mynded it hath this comfortable comoditie that in this trade their Factors be they their Sonnes or Children shall have no Instruction or confessions of Idolatrous religion enforced vpon them, but contrarily shalbe at their free libertie of conscience and shall fynde the same Religion exercised w^ch is most agreable vnto the Parents and M^rs.

As

As for m^r chaundizing w^ch is the matter 4.
especiallie loked for albeit that for the
prient wee are not certenlie able to promise
any suche like quantitie as is nowe at the
best time of the Mosconian trade brought
from thence, So likewise is there not
demaunded any suche proportion of daily
expence as was at the first and as yet is
consumed in this of Mosconia and others
but when this of America shall have
ben haunted and practized thirtie yeres
to an ende as thother hath ben I doubt not
by godz grace that for the tenne Shippes
that are nowe comonly employed once the
yere into Mosconia there shall in this
voiadge twise tenne be employed well
twise the yere at the leaste. And if for the
prient time there do fall out nothing els
but the bare fishing yet doubt I not after
the first yeres planting but by that matter
only to serve iij or iiij of yo^r best sorte
of Shippes although my supplie of people
do not followe me so substancially as in
all reason maye be well loked for.

16. But when it is asked what maye be hoped from thence after some yeres It is firste to be considered that this situacon in 40 degrees shalbe verie apte to gather the comodities of those partes wch stand to the sowth warde of it as also of those wch are to the northwardes.

In the northerlie maye be expected an especiall good fishing of Salmon Codd and Whales, also any other suche comodities as the esterne Countries do yelde vs nowe as Pitch, tarr, hempe and therof Cordage Masts boshe hides riche furres and other suche like without being in any sorte beholding to a king of Denmarck or other Prince or state that shalbe in suche sorte able to comaund our shipping at their pleasure as those do at this daie by meanes of their streight passedges and stronge shipping.

As for those partes wch lye west and to the southwardes It maye well be

hoaped they will yelde wynes w^th a smale
helpe since the grapes do growe there of them
selves abreadie verie fayre and in great
aboundaunce Olyves beeing once
planted will yelde the like oyle as Spaigne
and Italy, The Countrey beeing made to
knowe that for waxe and honey wee will
give them suche trifling things as they
desire of vs, and shewing them once the
meanes how to handle and provide the same
the labour thereof beeing so light, no doubte
but in shorte time they will earnestlie
care to haue the same in good quantitie
for vs, Besides what great likelyhood there
is of good meanes to make salte w^ch
maye serue for the fishing of those partes
maye well ynough appeare vnto them who
can Judge the qualitie of suche places as
is required to make the same.

Thus muche for the begynnynge because
they maye be had w^th an easie kynde
of trauaile. But when it maye haue
pleased god to establishe our people there

any suche time as they maye have planted amongst them in sondrie partes of the Countries and that by gentle and familiar entreating them they be made to see what is better for them then they do as yet understand of, and that in somany sortes of occasions as were infinite to be set downe. It is to be assuredlie hoaped for that they will daily by litle and litle forsake their barbarous and savedge lyving and growe to suche order and Civilitie with vs as there maye be well expected from thence no lesse quantitie and diu^sitie of m^e chaundize then is nowe had out of Dutcheland Italie Fraunce or Spaigne, And as the bordering neighbours are comonly the aptest to fall out w^th vs. So theis partes beeing somewhat further remote are the liker to take or geve lesse occasion of disquiet: But when it is considered that they are our owne kindred and esteemed our owne Countrey nation w^ch have the gou^ment meanyng by those who shalbe there planted who can loke for any other then the dealing of most loving and most assured friendf.

This is spoken vpon y^e opinion w^ch by some is surmysed that Ireland is not suffred to be reduced to y^t perfection w^ch it might be, Least by chaunce one day revoltinge from the Crowne it might prove an over strong party to be so near an Enemy

There

There is further to be considered theis two poyntes of good Importaunce concernynge the matter of trade. Thone is that by the good prospering of this Action there must of necessitie fall out a verie liberall vttearance of our English Clothes into a Mayne Countrey described to be bigger then all Europe the largest parte whereof bending to the Northeward shall have wonderfull great vse of our said Clothes after they shall once come to knowe the comoditie thereof.

The like wilbe also of many other thinge over many to be reckoned w^ch^ are made here by our Artificers and laboring people and of necessitie must be provided from hence. Thother is if there be any possible meanes to fynde a sea passedge or other fresh water Course w^ch^ maye serve in some reasonable and convenient sorte to transporte our m^dch^aundize into the East Indian Sea through any of theis northerlie partes of America. It shalbe soonest and most assuredlie performed by theis who shall inhabite and first growe into

familiaritie w^th the Inland people.

What mynerall matter maye fall out to be founde is a thing leaste in suspence vntill some better knowledge because there be many men who having long synce expected some profitte herein vpon the great promises that haue ben made them and beeing as yet in no poynte satisfied do thereupon conceave that they be but wordes purposelie cast out for the inducing of men to be the more willing to furnishe their money towardes the charge of the first discouerie.

But nowe to answere some others who begyn w^th another obiection saieing that it is not for the m^rchauntes purse to contynue the charge of transporting and planting, and that synce theis hundred men w^ch are nowe to be planted will cost iiij^cl. It is then to be thought that the charge of a farr greater nomber wilbe also a farr greater some of money whereunto I answere that in all Attemptes vnknowen especiallie such a one as is this wherew^th wee are prentlie in hand the first charges are

comonly adventured in a more desperate kinde then 15.
those that followe vpon some better knowledge, And
therew^th it falleth out that where one Adventureth
in the first enterprise an hundredd for that one
will of themselues be willing and desirous to
adventure in the nexte, yf there be never so litle
more appearaunce that the entended matter is
by some knowledge of our owne fowarde trewe
in some poyntes of our first presumption.
The examples are many and maye easelie be
remembred by those who be m^dchaunts even in
their ordinarie and daily trades aswell as in
extraordinarie attemptes w^ch of late yeres have
fallen into those termes of some likelyhood
as is abouesaid. So then no doubte but when
certen reportes shalbe brought by them who
directlie come from thence that suche a
Countrey and people they have them selues
seene as is by vs spoken of but that then
there will come forwarde a greate nomber
of those who nowe neither have hard any
thing of the matter, as also of others who
prentlie make suche frivolous scruple as
will not be otherwise satisfied then by the
reporte of S^t Thomas.

The Ewre of mettall brought by Mr Frowbysher caused a greate supply to be furnyshed the yeare followinge.

S^r Fra: Drake his onely passinge throughe y^e Islandes of y^e Molucca caused a preparation thither of xiiij or xv thousand powndes.

16. I speake not this by the marchaunts whome for their ffecedoms I would not have prefsed to any further charge then this first prepara-tion, but rather by suche as have great affection to hazard the chaunging of their estates and could be well contente to go in the voiadge yf they might only be assured there is suche a Countrey and that their money should not be wasted to nothing in the preparations.

The right examination of this poynte must be the contrarie segnell of the comon proverbe Nothing venter nothing have, So on thotherside by venturing many great good profitts are fownde out to the wonderfull benefytt of the comon wealth and to those especiallie in private who take on them the hazarde of their liefe and travaile or substaunce, in the first Attemptes. And therefore I would withe that they who (God be thancked) are well able to spare that w^ch is required of each one towarde the undertaking of this

Adventure

Adventure be well content and willing to
employe the same syince the sequell in good
and substanciall reason doth promise not
only a great comodities in ꝑticuler to the
mᵈchaunt who shall here at hoame exercise
the trade of mᵈchaundize but also to an
infinite nomber of others who prentlie live
in poore estate and maye by taking the
opportunitie of this discoverie alter the
same to a farr better degree. Wherfore to
make some conclusion vpon this poynte
of the mᵈchaunts misdoubte who suspecteth
least this first disburcement wᵗhout
retorne of prent gayne should not be all
his chardge: but that afterwardz he might
yet further be vrged to contynue the like
agayne as hath happened in the discouᵉie
of the Mosconian trade. It maye suffice
to consider that this is not an Action wᶜh
concerneth only the mᵈchauntz ꝑticulerlie
but a great deale more the gen̄all sorte
of people throughout all England. And
then when suche Relation shalbe retorned
as that it maye be fownde a matter worthie

the following, the whole gen^d^alitie will not refuse to contribute to the furtheraunce thereof rather then it should synck for wante of any reasonable supplie.

But as it is a verie litle time since I haue ben thoroughlie resolved to trie my fortune in the matter; so is it more then time the preparation were in hand alreadie, and therefore no fytt time nowe to go about to make any nomber of ignoraunt men to understand w^th^ reason the circumstaunce that belongeth vnto a matter of so great consideration and Importaunce.

To those who haue any forward myndes in well doing to the gen^d^alitie of mankind I saye thus muche further that Christian Charitie doth as greatlie p^r^swade the furtheraunce of this Action as any other that maye be laide before vs in asmuch as hereby wee shall not only do a moste excellent worke in reducing the savedge

people to Christianitie and Ciuilitie: but also in respecte of our poore sorte of people wch are verie many amongest vs lyeing altogeather vnproffitably and oftentimes to the great disquiet of the better sorte.

For who knoweth not howe by the longe peace happie health and blessed plentifulnes wherewth god hath endewed this Realme that the people is so mightelie encreased as a great nomber beeing brought vp dueing their youth in their Parents howses wthout any Instruction howe to get their lyvinge after their Parents decease, are driven to some necessitie whereby verie often for wante of better education they fall into sondrie disorders, and so the good sorte of people (as I saide before) are by them ordinarily troubled and them selues ledd on to one shamefull ende or other whereas if there might be founde some suche kinde of Imployment as this would be, No doubt but a great pte of them would be wthheld from falling into suche vile dedes, and in

20. steede thereof wrove greattie serviceable in those affaires where they might be so Imployed This I speake of myne owne experience having seene divers come over to the warres of the Lowe Countries dwring my residence in the same who here had byn verie evill and Idle lyvers and by some contynuaunce w^th vs have growen to be verie industrious in their facultie w^ch I can assure yo^u was a more panefull maner of lyving then in this Action is like to fall out and w^th all to a purpose of farr lesse valewe in respecte of their pticuler recompence then w^th an assured kinde of good hoape is looked for in this.

Thus yo^u see howe in everie poynte that maye be wished for in a good Action and voiadge there is matter and reason yenough to satisfie the well disposed. But nowe to growe somewhat nearer the quick and to shewe yo^u some greater appearaunce of the merchants proffitt then hath ben yet spoken of yo^u maye vnderstand by

that

that followeth the circumstance of a litle discourse w^ch doth concerne theis matters verie directlie.

In the yere 1534. James Carthier of Deepe made his first discoverie of those partes of America w^ch lye to the westwardes and as it were on the back side of Newfownde lande In w^ch voiadge his principall Intencon was to seeke out the passedge w^ch he presumed might have ben founde out into the Est Indian Sea otherwise called the passedge to Cathayo but this yere he wente no higher then the Islande of the Assumption in the great bay of S^t Lawrence and so retourned backe into Fraunce.

The nexte yere following he wente w^th greater provision into the graunde Baye agayne where he keeping the Northerlie shoare ranne vpp the great River that comes downe from Canada and other places vntill at last w^th his smale Pinnaces having lefte his great shipping by the waie

he arrived to Hochelaga Towne beeing
fyve hundreth leagues wᵗʰ in thentraunce
of the graund Bay In wᶜʰ travaile he had
spente somuche of the yere that it was nowe
the monethe of October, and therfore thought it
convenient for the better enformyng hym
self at large in this Discouᵉye to wynter
it out in those partes wᶜʰ he did at a
place called by hym self Holie Croſse.
This winter fell out to be a verie longe
and harde wynter as many tymes the
like happeneth wᵗʰ vs in theis partes
And the Sauedge people who for the most
ꝑte make but a slender kinde of prouision
even as it weare from hand to mowthe
fell into some scarcitie of victualls yet
did they not refuse to serve the frenche
men wᵗʰ any thing they had all the
winter longe albeit at somewhat higher
prices towardᵉ thende when the needᵉ
was most as wᵗʰ our selves happeneth
at suche times. But when the frenche
had had their wants seru'd all the yere
and that as yet they sawe not any

apparance of their entended matter wch was the
discourie of the passedge and yet ymagyning
by the signes whereso th the willing people
endevored to declare their knowledge in that
poynte that some good matter might be had
from them yf they might have ben well
understood they resolued w th them selues to
take some of the sufficientest men of that
Contrey hoame into Fraunce and there to
kepe them so long as that having once
achived the Frenche tongue they might declare
more substancially their mynde and know-
ledge in the saide passedge Concluding this
to be the meane of least charge of least
travaile and of least hazard And when
they came to bethinck them selves who
might be meetest for yt; they determined
to take the king as the p'sonne who might
be the best enformed of suche partes as were
somewhat remote from his owne Countrey,
as also that for the respecte of hym the
people would be alwaies readie and
contente to do them any further service
when it should happen them to retourne

24. thether agayne about the discoverie. This the poore king of the Countrey w^th ij or iij other of his chief Companions comynge aborde the frenche shippes beeing required thether to a bancket was traiterously carried awaie into Fraunce where he lived fower yeres and then died a Christian there as Theurt the frenche kinge Cosmographer doth make mention.

This outerage and Iniurious dealing did put the whole Countrey people into suche mislike with the frenche as never synce they would admytt any conversation or familiaritie w^th them vntill of late yeres the olde matter begynnyng to growe out of mynde and beeing the rather drawen on by guiftes of many trifling things wch were of great valewe w^th them, they are as I saide w^thin theis two or three yeres contento agayne to admytt a trafficqe wch two yeres since was begon w^th a smale barck of 30 Tonnes whose retourne was founde so proffitable as

Beeing the yere 1581.

as

as the nexte yere following beeing the last 25.
yere by those mchauntes who mente to
have kepte the trade secrete vnto them
selves from any others of their owne Countrey
men; there was hired a shipp of iiij xx tonnes 1582.
out of the Isle of Jersey but not any one
Mariner of that place saving a shipboy.
This Shipp made her retourne in suche
sorte as that this yere they have multi-
-plied their shipping to be one of Nyne-
-score tonns, an other of an hundred
tonns and a third of fowrescore tonnes
wch reporte is geven by verie substanciall
and honest men of Plymouth who sawe
the saide Shippes in readines to departe
on their voiage and were aborde of some
of them.

Here is at this instant in the towne
a man of Gernesey Lewyes de Vike
who reporteth to have credibly heard
that by this last yeres voiadge the
frenchmen got xiiij or xv c for eny one
hundred, but howsoev it be, yt carrieth

good likelyhood of some notable proffit in asmuche as they do so greatlie and thus soddenly encrease the nomber and burthen of their Shippes this pnte yere.

Nowe if in so litle as two yeres time this voiadge of the Northerne partes begrowen to suche good passe as hath ben declared vnto yo^u^ It is worth the thincking on to consider what maye be hoaped for from the Southerne partes which in all reason maye promise a great deal more. And so as one beeing borne of the Citie having many of my verie good frendz amongest yo^u^ both by kyndred and otherwise and one who was never touched w^th^ any dishonest or indirect meanyng. I presume to wishe and pswade yo^u^ to some better taking of this matter to harte as a thing w^ch^ I do verely thinck will tourne to yo^r^ greater and more assured comoditie then yo^u^ receave by any other voiadge as yet frequented of so shorte and so saulf a Course as this hath.